



Key Planning Factors and Considerations for Response to and Recovery from a Biological Incident

July 2022



FEMA

1 Table of Contents

2	Introduction	1
3	Overview	1
4	Purpose	1
5	Scope	1
6	Audience	2
7	Organization of Document.....	2
8	While You Read	3
9	Crosscutting Considerations.....	4
10	What Is a Biological Incident?	4
11	Biological Incidents in the United States.....	5
12	Illustrating Examples of Past Incidents.....	5
13	Biological Incident Characteristics.....	11
14	Health Equity	12
15	Facts, Assumptions, and Critical Considerations.....	13
16	Relevant Authorities and Legislation	17
17	KPF 1: Detect and Characterize the Threat.....	20
18	1.1 Initial Detection	20
19	1.2 Response Initiation	30
20	1.3 Incident Characterization.....	32
21	1.4 Federal Assistance for Incident Detection and Characterization.....	36
22	KPF 2: Communicate with External Partners and the Public.....	42
23	2.1 Communications for a Coordinated Response and Recovery.....	42
24	2.2 Communications for an Informed Public	46
25	2.3 Strategies for Effective Communications	52
26	2.4 Federal Assistance for Communication with External Partners and the Public.....	57
27	KPF 3: Control the Spread of Disease.....	61

28	3.1 Non-Pharmaceutical Interventions.....	61
29	3.2 Medical Countermeasures.....	67
30	3.3 Environmental Containment and Source Reduction.....	74
31	3.4 Human, Animal, Equipment, and Site Decontamination	79
32	3.5 Federal Assistance for Controlling the Spread of Disease	84
33	KPF 4: Augment Provision of Mass Care and Human Services to the Affected Population ..	87
34	4.1 Mass Care Considerations for Shelter-In-Place or Restricted Movement Scenarios.....	87
35	4.2 Mass Care Consideration for Feeding Operations During Larger-Scale/Longer-Duration	
36	Scenarios (Non-Evacuation Scenarios)	90
37	4.3 Mass Care Considerations for Evacuation and Post-Evacuation Scenarios.....	92
38	4.4 Service Animals and Household Pets	97
39	4.5 Community Reception Centers.....	98
40	4.6 Decontamination Support.....	100
41	4.7 Public Fear and Mental Health Impacts.....	101
42	4.8 Federal Assistance for Mass Care and Human Services	104
43	KPF 5: Augment Provision of Health and Medical Services to the Affected Population	107
44	5.1 Medical Care Considerations.....	107
45	5.2 Medical Countermeasures Use in Healthcare Facilities	109
46	5.3 Healthcare Resilience	109
47	5.4 Veterinary Care	113
48	5.5 Fatality Management	114
49	5.6 Federal Assistance for Health and Medical Services.....	116
50	KPF 6: Augment Essential Services to Achieve Recovery Outcomes.....	120
51	6.1 Recovery Planning, Indicators, and Priorities	120
52	6.2 Support the Affected Community Through Recovery Support Functions	125
53	6.3 Post-Incident Recovery Planning.....	137
54	Planning, Decision-Support, and Modeling Resources for Biological Incidents	139
55	Defining Modeling Tools	139
56	Modeling and Simulation Uses and Limitations.....	140

57	Photo Credits.....	152
58	Appendix A: Examples of National-Level Notification Modalities.....	155
59	Appendix B: Examples of a Biological Pathogen Detection, Verification, and Information	
60	Sharing.....	159
61	Appendix C: Funding Sources for Stafford and Non-Stafford Incidents.....	161
62	Appendix D: Support Functions.....	163
63	Emergency Support Functions (ESFs).....	163
64	Recovery Support Functions (RSFs).....	165
65	Appendix E: Federal Assets for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN)	
66	Incidents.....	166
67	Department of Homeland Security Assets for CBRN Incidents.....	166
68	Department of Health and Human Services Assets for CBRN Incidents.....	167
69	Department of Defense Assets for CBRN Incidents.....	168
70	Other Federal Assets for CBRN Incidents.....	169
71	Appendix F: Acronym List.....	171
72	Appendix G: Glossary of Terms.....	176
73		

74 Introduction

75 Overview

76 Because biological incidents can cross jurisdictional boundaries and have cascading effects,
77 coordinated response and recovery efforts will include organizations at all levels of government, the
78 private sector, non-governmental organizations (NGOs), and, potentially, international partners.
79 Planning for a biological incident requires considerations beyond a general, all-hazards approach to
80 preparedness; this document focuses on strategic issues and critical considerations that are specific
81 to infectious diseases and biological incidents.

82 Purpose

83 The purpose of this document is to identify key areas where appropriate planning among key
84 partners and stakeholders can significantly enhance the response to and recovery from a biological
85 incident. It serves as a comprehensive update of the April 2017 *Key Planning Factors and*
86 *Considerations for Response to a Biological Incident* and now includes planning considerations for
87 recovery, issues related to household pets and service animals, non-pharmaceutical interventions
88 (NPIs), medical countermeasures (MCMs), and public fear during a biological incident.

89 Although they may vary based on the size, scope, and complexity of a particular incident, the overall
90 challenges posed by a biological incident and corresponding menu of response and recovery
91 measures to be considered will be similar regardless of agent or disease vector—for example,
92 consideration of the pathogen causing disease, potential intentionality of the incident, availability of
93 specialized MCMs, long-term contamination, etc. For this reason, the document does not describe
94 planning approaches to specific biological incident scenarios (e.g., template plans for various
95 pathogens). Rather, it provides considerations applicable across a range of potential biological
96 incident types.

97 Scope

98 The scope of this document is planning for biological incidents in state, local, tribal, and territorial
99 (SLTT) jurisdictions throughout the United States (U.S.). While most international issues are beyond
100 the scope of this document and are addressed principally at the federal level, some considerations
101 are included here as they may relate to SLTT biological incident response and recovery. Readers are
102 directed to the *Biological Incident Annex to the Response and Recovery Federal Interagency*
103 *Operational Plans* (BIA; FIOP) for additional information on the United States government's (USG's)
104 international engagement during a biological incident. Foodborne diseases and other communicable
105 diseases of concern to the livestock and agricultural industry are also beyond the scope of this
106 document, and readers are directed to the *National Food and Agriculture Incident Annex to the*
107 *Response and Recovery Federal Interagency Operations Plans* (FAIA; FIOP) for additional
108 information.

109 **Audience**

110 This document provides education, awareness, and guidance to support the development of
111 effective biological incident plans at the SLTT and regional levels. The intended audience is SLTT
112 emergency management planners.

113 **Organization of Document**

114 This document is organized into seven sections:

- 115 ▪ **Crosscutting Considerations:** Provides background on biological incidents, past examples,
116 common characteristics across all types of pathogens, planning considerations, and relevant
117 authorities and legislation.

- 118 ▪ **Detect and Characterize the Threat:** Offers an overview of biological incident detection, incident
119 characterization, initial response, and considerations for criminal investigations.

- 120 ▪ **Communicate with External Partners and the Public:** Identifies effective communication
121 strategies to provide public information and to collaborate with partners for a coordinated
122 response and recovery.

- 123 ▪ **Control the Spread of Disease:** Describes types of NPIs, access to MCMs, environmental
124 containment, source reduction, and decontamination during biological incidents.

- 125 ▪ **Augment Provision of Mass Care and Human Services to the Affected Population:** Explains mass
126 care considerations for shelter-in-place or restricted movement scenarios and for evacuation
127 scenarios. Additional information on mental health, public fear, and household pets and service
128 animals is also included.

- 129 ▪ **Augment Provision of Health and Medical Services to the Affected Population:** Details medical
130 care considerations, healthcare resilience, and fatality management.

- 131 ▪ **Augment Essential Services to Achieve Recovery Outcomes:** Reviews recovery planning,
132 indicators, and priorities for a biological incident including considerations for long-term recovery
133 indicators. Supporting the affected community through Recovery Support Functions (RSFs) is
134 also discussed.

135 These Key Planning Factors (KPFs) are augmented by Planning, Decision-Support, and Modeling
136 Resources for Biological Incidents and various appendices, which provide additional reference
137 materials that will be useful when developing plans and implementing the actions recommended
138 throughout the document.

139 **While You Read**

140 Throughout this document, the reader will find specialized callout boxes that highlight opportunities
141 for action and coordination with other government agencies or jurisdictions and community partners
142 or reference external materials. A guide to those specialized callout boxes is provided here.

143  **Action Item**

144 A suggested activity to complete during planning

145  **Coordination Opportunity**

146 An example of stakeholder coordination highlighted in the content

147  **Refer To**

148 Guidance for locating more information from a separate resource

149  **What Would You Do?**

150 A critical thinking exercise or discussion question

151 **What Will You Need to Know?**

152 Questions to answer or consider when creating or reviewing plans

153 Crosscutting Considerations

154 Biological incidents are often complex. Such incidents pose many unique challenges that impact
155 traditional approaches to key response and recovery goals such as the preservation of life,
156 property, and the environment; promotion of economic stability; and meeting basic human
157 needs. Compared with other all-hazards incident types, planning and preparedness for biological
158 incidents requires consideration of a variety of factors unique to infectious disease outbreak
159 scenarios. This section provides foundational information that is critical for understanding
160 commonalities shared by the various types of biological incidents and their influence on
161 response and recovery.

162 What Is a Biological Incident?

163 For the purpose of this document, a biological incident refers to the occurrence of cases or
164 outbreaks involving a biological pathogen that affects people, regardless of whether it is naturally
165 occurring or deliberately caused. Biological incidents, often leading to declarations of public health
166 emergencies, can occur anywhere within the U.S., sometimes impacting multiple geographic regions
167 simultaneously. Greater movement of people, animals, and goods across international borders
168 increases the risk of exposure to health threats originating outside of the U.S. Widespread and
169 improper use of antibiotic, anti-viral, antifungal, and anti-parasitic treatments and other MCMs are
170 also accelerating the emergence of drug-resistant pathogens.

171 Planning and preparedness for biological incidents requires consideration of those characteristics
172 that are unique to these events, such as the potential contagious nature of a disease (communicable
173 or non-communicable), need for and availability of specialized MCMs for long-term contamination, or
174 for an incident to be the result of an intentional attack.

- 175 ▪ A **communicable disease** is an infectious disease that is transmissible by contact with
176 infected individuals or their bodily discharges or fluids (such as respiratory droplets, blood, or
177 semen), by contact with contaminated surfaces or objects (fomites), by ingestion of
178 contaminated water, or by direct or indirect contact with disease vectors (such as
179 mosquitoes, fleas, or mice).
- 180 ▪ A **non-communicable disease** is a disease that is not transmissible from person to person.

181 During a biological incident, the roles and responsibilities of public health, healthcare, emergency
182 management, and potentially law enforcement officials should be expected to intersect. Hence,
183 success in achieving response and recovery objectives will require the ongoing engagement of a
184 wide variety of partners. Similar to other types of emergencies, most biological incidents are
185 managed locally or regionally by existing response and recovery structures with established
186 coordination processes. Federal support may be available during instances in which SLTT needs
187 exceed the capacity of available resources.

188 **Biological Incidents in the United States**

189 Historically, most biological incidents, such as past outbreaks of severe acute respiratory syndrome
190 (SARS; 2003), H1N1 influenza (2009), Zika virus disease (2016–2017), and the 1993 Milwaukee
191 *Cryptosporidium* outbreak have not resulted in an emergency or major disaster declaration under the
192 Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (Stafford Act). In contrast, the
193 national-level response needs for the coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic prompted the
194 President to make an emergency declaration under the Stafford Act to support large-scale biological
195 incident response and recovery activities. To date, the only other instance of a President issuing an
196 emergency declaration under the Stafford Act in response to an infectious disease event occurred in
197 2000 during the West Nile virus (WNV) outbreak response in New York and New Jersey.¹ Readers are
198 directed to the BIA for more information on federal emergency or disaster declarations made during
199 past biological incidents.

200 **Illustrating Examples of Past Incidents**

201 The challenges posed by a biological incident and corresponding response and recovery strategies
202 will largely depend on the pathogen type, its mode of transmission, the availability of MCMs, and the
203 intentionality (e.g., accidental vs. malicious) of the release. A wide range of incident types are
204 possible in terms of size and scope. While this range greatly influences response and recovery
205 considerations for planners, in all cases, key considerations should be based on the biological
206 agent's potential to cause harm to humans, animals, or the environment. Described as examples
207 below, past domestic and international incidents illustrate the wide range of potential scope, scale,
208 and response needs for different types of biological incidents.

209 **1.1.1 SVERDLOVSK ANTHRAX OUTBREAK (1979)²**

210 In April 1979 in Sverdlovsk, Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR), animals, including livestock,
211 began dying from anthrax, with no identified environmental source. Shortly thereafter, doctors began
212 to report illnesses and deaths in humans from anthrax. The origin of the anthrax in humans was
213 initially reported to be contaminated meat; later, scientists observed that most of the humans and
214 animals affected lived within a narrow zone downwind of a nearby military facility and determined
215 that this military facility had accidentally released anthrax spores into the air.

¹ Congressional Research Service. (2021). *Stafford Act Assistance for Public Health Incidents*.
<https://crsreports.congress.gov/product/pdf/IN/IN11229>

² Meselson, M., Guillemin, J., Hugh-Jones, M., Langmuir, A., Popova, I., Shelokov, A., Yampolskaya, O. (1994). The Sverdlovsk anthrax outbreak of 1979. *Science*, 266(5188), 1202–1208.
<https://www.science.org/doi/10.1126/science.7973702>



216

217

Figure 1: *Bacillus anthracis* spores released from a military facility in Sverdlovsk, USSR³

218

This incident represents the largest documented outbreak of human inhalation anthrax, with 96 cases leading to 64 deaths, and demonstrates how a biological release may not be recognized for some time, during which the extent of the hazard and the source/cause of the incident will remain unclear. Further, the incident demonstrates how biological agents may move (especially via water or air) and persist in the environment and how biological agents can affect the health of both human and animal populations of a community.

219

220

221

222

223

224

1.1.2 AMERITHRAX (2001)^{4,5}

225

The Amerithrax incident of 2001 represents the malicious use of a biological agent and the potential for intentional biological incidents to cause outsized harm to society and to engender fear among U.S. citizens. On October 3, 2001, an employee of Florida American Media, Inc. was diagnosed with inhalational anthrax; he died two days later. Soon after, anthrax spores were found in the office where the employee worked. This man's death, along with multiple suspicious letters found within the mail around the same time (one of which potentially reached the man's office), triggered a U.S. Department of Justice (DOJ) Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) investigation. These additional letters were sent to the New York Post and NBC News in New York City, where they sickened multiple media organization employees and U.S. Postal Service (USPS) workers.

226

227

228

229

230

231

232

233

234

Three weeks later, letters laced with anthrax spore-containing "white powder" were sent to U.S. senators Daschle and Leahy at their Washington, D.C., offices. The letter to Senator Daschle was opened in Hart Senate Office Building on October 15, 2001, triggering evacuations, mass

235

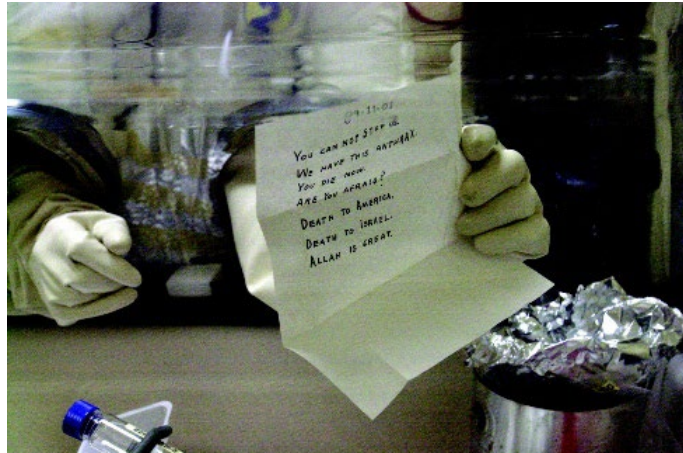
236

³ (Left) Stasyan117. (2015). *Русский: Свердловская область на карте России* [Online image]. https://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Map_of_Russia_-_Sverdlovsk_Oblast.svg; (right) Carr, J.H. (2002). *Sterne strain of Bacillus anthracis bacteria* [Photograph]. CDC. <https://phil.cdc.gov/Details.aspx?pid=10122>

⁴ Department of Justice (DOJ). (2010). *Amerithrax Investigative Summary*. <https://www.justice.gov/archive/amerithrax/docs/amx-investigative-summary.pdf>

⁵ Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2020, November 20). *Ciprofloxacin for Post-Exposure Prophylaxis of Anthrax*. National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases (NCEZID). <https://www.cdc.gov/anthrax/medical-care/cipro-eui-hcp.html#:~:text=The%20full%20PEP%20regimen%20is,additional%20quantities%20of%20the%20drug>

237 prophylaxis of government employees, and subsequent building decontamination. The letter to
238 Senator Leahy was not discovered and recovered until a month later.



239

240 **Figure 2: Laboratory technician holding the anthrax-laced letter addressed to Senator Leahy**
241 **after safely opening it at the U.S. Army's Fort Detrick biomedical research laboratory in**
242 **November 2001⁶**

243 Contamination due to the circulation of these letters within the USPS system resulted in five deaths
244 and sickened 22 others. The incident, one of the worst biological attacks in U.S. history, spurred the
245 closing of 35 commercial mailrooms and postal facilities along with 26 buildings on Capitol Hill for
246 investigation and decontamination. Due to the potential for widespread USPS worker exposure, more
247 than 3,000 postal workers in New York, New Jersey, and Washington, D.C., were prescribed an
248 emergency course of prophylactic antibiotics. While the discrete location of each incident allowed for
249 a tailored response to this intentional attack, the fear instilled affected many, and the expense of
250 necessary site decontamination activities was great.

251 **1.1.3 EBOLA VIRUS DISEASE (2014)^{7,8}**

252 In August 2014, an Ebola virus disease (EVD) outbreak in West Africa was declared a Public Health
253 Emergency of International Concern (PHEIC) by the World Health Organization (WHO). At the time of
254 the PHEIC declaration, this was the largest EVD outbreak ever recorded. The outbreak involved

⁶ FBI. (n.d.). *Laboratory technician holding the anthrax-laced letter addressed to Senator Leahy* [Photograph].
<https://www.fbi.gov/history/famous-cases/amerithrax-or-anthrax-investigation>

⁷ Joint and Coalition Operational Analysis (JCOA). (2016). *Operation United Assistance: The DOD Response to Ebola in West Africa*. https://www.jcs.mil/Portals/36/Documents/Doctrine/ebola/OUA_report_jan2016.pdf

⁸ McCarthy, M. (2014). Liberian man being treated for Ebola in Texas dies. *BMJ: British Medical Journal* 349: g6145.
<https://doi.org/10.1136/bmj.g6145>

255 transmission in Guinea, Liberia, Nigeria, and Sierra Leone, and these four countries reported 1,779
256 cases, including 961 deaths.⁹

257 On September 25, 2014, a man visiting Dallas, Texas, sought treatment at the Texas Presbyterian
258 Hospital emergency department. He was initially diagnosed with sinusitis and unspecified abdominal
259 pain and sent home with antibiotics. Three days later, the man's symptoms had worsened, and he
260 was transported by ambulance back to the hospital. This time, the doctor noted the man had
261 recently traveled from Liberia and ordered a test for Ebola virus infection. The doctor also contacted
262 the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) Centers for Disease Control and
263 Prevention (CDC). On September 30, the HHS CDC announced the man was diagnosed with EVD,
264 making it the first laboratory-confirmed Ebola case diagnosed in the U.S. The man's condition
265 worsened despite the provision of critical care and experimental drug treatment, and he died on
266 October 8. Local public health officials conducted contact tracing of the patient, and all 177 known
267 contacts were monitored for 21 days.

268 Two healthcare workers who cared for the patient discussed above at Texas Presbyterian Hospital
269 subsequently developed symptoms, and both tested positive for Ebola virus infection. Due to the
270 potentially high mortality rate of EVD, these two healthcare workers were transferred to highly
271 specialized treatment centers at the National Institutes of Health (NIH) Clinical Center in Bethesda,
272 Maryland and Emory Hospital in Atlanta, Georgia, respectively, and both recovered. Also in October
273 2014, the New York City Department of Health and Mental Hygiene reported a case of EVD in a
274 physician who had just returned from Guinea where he served with Doctors Without Borders. The
275 physician was treated at Bellevue Hospital Center and discharged. Contact tracing and quarantine
276 measures were implemented for people in contact with each of the three healthcare workers that
277 developed EVD infections. In addition, the physician's apartment and the bowling alley he visited the
278 day before his hospitalization required decontamination.

⁹ World Health Organization (WHO). (2014, August 8). *Ebola outbreak in West Africa declared a public health emergency of international concern*. <https://www.euro.who.int/en/health-topics/communicable-diseases/pages/news/news/2014/08/ebola-outbreak-in-west-africa-declared-a-public-health-emergency-of-international-concern>



279

280

Figure 3: Ebola patient being transferred by ambulance

281 The intense resource requirements for treating, quarantining, contact tracing, decontaminating, and
282 mass public messaging in incidents involving diseases with high mortality rates may quickly surpass
283 most local response capabilities. In 2014, Ebola was handled by local authorities reporting to state
284 and federal authorities, which provided national coordination across states. The incident also
285 highlights the possibility for public fear of a disease to take hold. While Ebola is a serious and deadly
286 disease, according to the HHS CDC, a person can only spread Ebola to other people after they
287 develop signs and symptoms of Ebola, and EVD poses little risk to travelers or the general public who
288 have not cared for or been in close contact with someone sick with Ebola.¹⁰ Risk communication is
289 critical to effective biological incident response and recovery.

290 **1.1.4 CORONAVIRUS DISEASE 2019 (2020)** ^{11,12}

291 At the time of writing this document, the coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) pandemic is ongoing
292 and has caused the deaths of more than 6.01 million people worldwide.¹³ The first COVID-19 cases
293 in the U.S. were identified at the end of January 2020 and were associated with travel to China. The
294 Secretary of HHS declared a public health emergency on January 31, 2020. Community transmission
295 of COVID-19 was first documented in Seattle, Washington, when the first non-travel-related case of

¹⁰ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2021, January 14). *Transmission*. National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases (NCEZID), Division of High-Consequence Pathogens and Pathology (DHCPP), Viral Special Pathogens Branch (VSPB). <https://www.cdc.gov/vhf/ebola/transmission/index.html>

¹¹ Jorden, M.A., Rudman, S.L., Villarino, E., Hoferka, S., Patel, M.T., Bemis, K., Simmons, C.R., Jespersen, M., Johnson, J.I., Mytty, E., Arends, K.D., Henderson, J.J., Mathes, R.W., Weng, C.X., Duchin, J., Lenahan, J., Close, N., Bedford, T., Boeckh, M., Chu, H.Y., Englund, J.A., Famulare, M., Nickerson, D.A., Rieder, M.J., Shendure, J., Starita, L.M. (2020). Evidence for Limited Early Spread of COVID-19 Within the United States, January–February 2020. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report (MMWR)*, 69(22), 680–684. <http://dx.doi.org/10.15585/mmwr.mm6922e1>.

¹² Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (2021, September 13). COVID-19 Vaccine Distribution: The Process. <https://www.hhs.gov/coronavirus/covid-19-vaccines/distribution/index.html>

¹³ Center for Systems Science and Engineering (CSSE) at Johns Hopkins University (JHU). (n.d.). COVID-19 Dashboard. <https://coronavirus.jhu.edu/map.html>

296 COVID-19 in the U.S. was confirmed on February 28, 2020. In response to the growing risk of
297 widespread disease transmission throughout the U.S., the President declared a nationwide
298 emergency under the Stafford Act in March 2020. This Stafford Act declaration was associated with
299 the formation of a Unified Coordination Group (UCG) organized by the Federal Emergency
300 Management Agency (FEMA).



301

302

Figure 4: COVID-19 vaccine administration¹⁴

303 Without a vaccine or specific treatment available initially, patients with COVID-19 received supportive
304 care in isolation, and exposed individuals were quarantined. NPIs like mask wearing, contact tracing,
305 social distancing, restricting visitors at hospitals, and restricting travel to infection hotspots were
306 employed to help mitigate disease spread. After a multidisciplinary effort for rapid vaccine
307 development supported by the federal government, academia, and industry, the Food and Drug
308 Administration (FDA) issued an emergency use authorization for the first COVID-19 vaccine on
309 December 11, 2020. Similar authorization followed rapidly for other vaccines, and a nationwide
310 vaccine distribution campaign for adults began.

311 The introduction of COVID-19 into the U.S. serves as warning for how easily international disease
312 outbreaks can spread across the globe and highlights the challenges posed by novel or emerging
313 infectious diseases that are communicable from person to person. Two years after the outbreak
314 began, COVID-19 cases continue to challenge healthcare capacities as viral variants emerge and
315 spread. Hospitals in infection hotspots continue to experience staff shortages due to illness and
316 exposure. Meanwhile, the ongoing pandemic continues to strain local and federal response agencies
317 working to protect the nation's health and safety while maintaining the stability of the workforce and
318 the economy. This incident demonstrates how international travel can rapidly spread communicable
319 diseases worldwide, how a biological incident can seriously disrupt critical infrastructure and global
320 supply chains, and how the healthcare sector is essential to the response while its workers are
321 particularly vulnerable to pathogen exposure.

¹⁴ Miciano, J.V. (2021). *COVID-19 vaccine administered into arm* [Photograph]. DVIDS Hub.
<https://www.dvidshub.net/image/6606617/covid-19-vaccination-sites>

322 **Biological Incident Characteristics**

323 Biological incidents can vary widely in scope and scale, requiring adaptable and flexible plans.
324 Appropriate planning considerations for response to and recovery from such incidents may be better
325 understood if the incidents are described in terms of their defining characteristics.

326 **Defining characteristics for biological incidents include, but are not limited to, whether the**
327 **incident involves:**

- 328 ▪ An intentional attack vs. an accidental release vs. a natural outbreak
- 329 ▪ A communicable disease vs. a non-communicable disease
- 330 ▪ A discrete location of release vs. a wide-area release or outbreak
- 331 ▪ A notice vs. a no-notice event
- 332 ▪ An agent for which all appropriate MCMs (e.g., diagnostic tests, prophylaxis, therapeutics)
333 are available, for which some MCMs are available, or for which no MCMs are available

334 Examining the similarities and differences between incidents using these various defining
335 characteristics can help provide planners with a baseline understanding of potential response and
336 recovery considerations and inform corresponding decision-making. For example, an incident
337 involving anthrax, a non-communicable agent, whether intentional or accidental, requires significant
338 mass communication and decontamination. However, such an incident may have limited needs for
339 ongoing medical services, mass care, or sheltering-in-place. An incident involving a communicable
340 biological agent, such as a respiratory pandemic, will necessitate consideration of pathogen
341 detection and mass communication as well as health and medical services. In some cases,
342 pandemics may also generate mass care and sheltering-in-place requirements.

343 Beyond the examples discussed in detail above, many types of biological incidents will require
344 collaboration between emergency management, public health, healthcare, and other community
345 stakeholders to mount an effective response. For example, a vector-borne outbreak could involve
346 multiple partners to help prevent exposure to insects, such as mosquito abatement measures
347 necessary during the WNV outbreak in 2000. A waterborne outbreak such as Legionnaires' disease
348 would involve local water authorities to ensure water systems are treated appropriately and to advise
349 the public on when water is again safe to use. A measles outbreak in young children would need to
350 involve local school districts and childcare facilities to develop and implement a workable response
351 plan. An outbreak of hepatitis A among people experiencing unstable housing or homelessness may
352 require engagement from local social service organizations, shelters, and public safety. Specific
353 characteristics of each biological incident will dictate which community stakeholders need to be
354 involved in response and recovery, and cultivating relationships between emergency management,
355 public health, and healthcare planners can help to establish those connections.

356 During the response to a biological incident, some or all of these defining characteristics may not be
357 immediately known, and this lack of information may impede or frustrate decision-making on the
358 part of SLTT stakeholders. The key planning factors and considerations discussed in this document

359 are meant to provide planners with the crosscutting knowledge needed to plan for biological
360 incidents, even in the absence of detailed incident characterization early on in the response.

361 **Health Equity**

362 Established patterns of public health emergencies tend to disproportionately impact communities
363 that experience health disparities and inequities. Therefore, thorough attention should be
364 systematically given to health equity considerations in all coordination activities and lines of effort, in
365 every information-sharing process, and during every incident phase.

366 In addition to descriptive population health data, health equity considerations should include
367 consideration of how social policies, structures, conditions, and characteristics defining specific
368 places may create differences in exposure risks, social vulnerability, and resilience among diverse
369 populations in emergencies.

370 Rapidly assess the clustering of communicable and non-communicable or chronic diseases, and
371 chronic strains and stressors within populations that have historically experienced social, economic,
372 or political disadvantages and how exposure to the emergency might exacerbate poor health
373 outcomes. For example, consider how differences in the previous variables may be linked to
374 disproportionate impact and burden, to variations in the effectiveness and unintended
375 consequences of mitigation strategies, and to disparities in event-related outcomes, losses, or long-
376 term effects.

377 Each decision, activity, product, or process should be assessed with regard to how equity will be
378 affected. Every effort should be made to utilize options that reduce inequities. Moreover, an
379 inclusive, structurally competent workforce equipped to assess and address the needs of
380 increasingly diverse populations should be meaningfully engaged and leveraged in key leadership
381 positions.

382 Preparations for, rapid responses to, and recovery efforts centering on health equity following
383 biologic incidents can be facilitated by deploying a Chief Health Equity Officer.

384 **RESOLVING ETHICAL ISSUES**

385 The response to and recovery from a biological incident may also entail complex ethical
386 considerations. Recognizing and anticipating these potential conflicts provides an opportunity to
387 create ethical guidelines in advance. A proactive approach to creating ethical guidelines for disasters

388 can be found in the publication *Mass Medical Care with Scarce Resources: A Community Planning*
389 *Guide*. The following questions should be considered when creating ethical guidelines: ¹⁵

- 390 ▪ Who are the stakeholders? Think broadly and include not only persons and categories of persons
391 but institutions, organizations, professions, and communities.
- 392 ▪ What is the full range of duties, obligations, and authority of all impacted stakeholders? Think of
393 stakeholders as not only individuals but also institutions and groups.
- 394 ▪ How might the various duties and obligations of the principal stakeholders conflict?
- 395 ▪ What might be the short- and long-term consequences, both positive and negative, of each
396 possible course of action? How confident is the party in the accuracy of predictions?
- 397 ▪ What ethical principles are at stake (e.g., respect for persons, beneficence, non-maleficence,
398 justice, truth telling, liberty, opportunity, and reciprocity)? Which are in tension?



Refer To

- 400 ▪ U.S. HHS Office of the Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR)
401 Technical Resources, Assistance Center, and Information Exchange (TRACIE) Topic
402 Collection: Ethics webpage for more information on ethics resources

403 Facts, Assumptions, and Critical Considerations

404 The following information represents key facts, assumptions, and critical considerations that inform
405 biological incident response and recovery planning and related activities. The importance of each will
406 vary depending on the incident scope, scale, characteristics, and complexity.

407 FACTS AND ASSUMPTIONS

408 The following represent the highlights of more detailed discussion regarding general facts and
409 assumptions governing biological incident response and recovery planning presented in the BIA.

- 410 ▪ **Authorities:** SLTT governmental public health agencies have primary responsibility and authority
411 for the public health response to biological incidents within their jurisdictions and can implement
412 quarantine and movement restrictions that can vary, based in part, from federal guidance issued
413 by HHS CDC. Determining authorities and responsibilities of SLTT agencies ahead of time and

¹⁵ Roberts, M., Jodge, J.G., Gabriel, E., Hick, J., Cantrill, S., Wilkinson, A., & Matzo, M. (2007). *Mass Medical Care with Scarce Resources: A Community Planning Guide*. Health Systems Research.
<http://www.calhospitalprepare.org/sites/main/files/resources/Mass%20Medical%20Care%20with%20Scarce%20Resources.pdf>

414 identifying lead agencies for different areas of preparedness and response in line with local legal
415 authorities of each agency will result in more robust plans. Ideally, planners need to know the
416 legal situation on the ground in their local area and how SLTT elected political leaders or other
417 decision makers may adapt plans.

418 ▪ **Situational Awareness:** Immediate availability of full information on the biological threat is
419 improbable, ranging from hours (e.g., patient surge at emergency departments after attack), days
420 (e.g., pathogen identification, delineation of exposed areas and/populations), or months (e.g.,
421 determination of transmission rates, agent lethality, and susceptibility to countermeasures for
422 new agents) to unfold. Incident cause and/or disease origin may not be readily apparent.
423 Response actions will require many decisions to be made without complete information.

424 ▪ **Incident Coordination:** Planning and decision-making coordination should occur between SLTT
425 emergency managers, public health officials, healthcare coalitions (HCCs), and community
426 stakeholders (e.g., NGOs) to ensure aligned response activities (e.g., protective measure
427 guidance, positioning of MCM, security, and public messaging).

428 ▪ **Disease Transmission:** Highly transmissible pathogens (or infectious diseases) present a threat
429 to response and recovery depending on whether the disease is spread through direct contact
430 (e.g., human-to-human or animal-to-human contact) or indirect contact (e.g., contact with
431 contaminated objects, water, and vector-borne diseases) and on whether MCMs exist for the
432 specific pathogen (e.g., diagnostic tests, prophylaxis, therapeutics).

433 ▪ **Epidemiological Investigations:** Public and animal health epidemiological investigations will use
434 information from various sources (e.g., public health surveillance systems, laboratory reporting,
435 patient interviews) to identify the causative agent, source of the agent, mode of transmission,
436 and populations at risk. Investigations will be performed by local public health investigators, with
437 potential involvement by federal experts (e.g., HHS CDC) as appropriate.

438 ▪ **Criminal Investigations:** During intentional or alleged intentional biological incidents, the DOJ FBI
439 may coordinate joint criminal and epidemiological investigative activities with appropriate SLTT
440 law enforcement partners and other federal agencies.

441 ▪ **Animal Population Impacts:** While the focus of this document is human disease, some pathogens
442 affecting people may also affect animal health. If the pathogen has an animal reservoir, infection
443 control, including MCM, isolation, or depopulation, can extend to the animal population in
444 question. As discussed further in the FAIA, zoonotic diseases, where a virulent pathogen may
445 move from animal to human communities, require additional collaboration and coordination
446 between multiple agencies for response and recovery. Animal disease may affect a broad range
447 of species including wildlife, zoo, service, and companion animals, requiring infection control
448 through MCMs (e.g., vaccines) and NPIs (e.g., isolation or depopulation).

- 449 ▪ **Environmental Persistence:** Biological incident pathogens can be readily cleared from the
450 environment (exclusive of waterborne); some select pathogens are environmentally persistent
451 and may require specific decontamination methods.

- 452 ▪ **Differential Diagnosis:** Many illnesses have similar initial symptoms and may be undiagnosed or
453 improperly diagnosed until the disease and time progress or there is laboratory confirmation of
454 the biological agent.

- 455 ▪ **NPIs and MCMs:** Non-pharmaceutical interventions (or community mitigation strategies) are
456 measures that limit the spread of a pathogen, without the use of medical countermeasure, and
457 can be applied at the individual or community level. MCMs have been identified and stockpiled
458 to reduce the health impacts of specific, identified biological threats.

459 **CRITICAL CONSIDERATIONS**

460 Critical considerations represent additional key elements of information that planners should take
461 into account when developing a plan. The following represent the highlights of more detailed
462 discussion regarding critical considerations for biological incident response and recovery planning
463 presented in the BIA.

- 464 ▪ **Incident Detection:** Incident detection may be limited depending on the nature of the biological
465 agent and the existence or availability of diagnostic tests for the specific pathogen. Detection
466 strategies are more likely to be through passive recognition systems/surveillance (e.g.,
467 monitoring for symptoms), while certain agents may be detected through active systems (e.g.,
468 water monitoring systems).

- 469 ▪ **Malicious Acts:** A suspected or actual intentional biological threat, including a suspected terrorist
470 threat, will require close coordination between the public health and law enforcement
471 communities, and potentially the counterterrorism community, throughout the threat or incident.

- 472 ▪ **Authorities:** During a response where federal or SLTT authorities conflict or intersect, critical legal
473 and policy decisions will be required and may be elevated to higher levels of government for
474 resolution (such as movement restrictions, civil order). Planning efforts also should consider the
475 fact that different states have different authorities for local officials in different states.

- 476 ▪ **Public Information:** During an incident, there will be a time-sensitive demand for guidance and
477 other information from the public and from partners. Top priorities will be communication of risk
478 of exposure, exposure guidance, signs and symptoms, availability of MCMs, and protective
479 actions. Communications must synthesize complex medical and health information to promote
480 public compliance with government guidance.

- 481 ▪ **Behavioral and Mental Health Impacts:** Behavioral and mental health impacts (e.g., depression,
482 anxiety, post-traumatic stress disorder) due to stress, restrictions, and messaging may be
483 significant and should be anticipated. Negative perception of individuals, families, ethnic/racial
484 groups, or certain professions may also become associated with the incident via media and other

485 reports. The public's response to a biological incident may be quite different than after other
486 types of natural disasters when communities often come together.

- 487 ▪ **Disproportionate Responder and Receiver Community Impacts:** Depending on the agent and the
488 nature of the incident, responders and first receivers may be disproportionately impacted
489 physically and mentally due to increased exposure, frequent changes in operational
490 environment, limited resource availability, working conditions, concerns about exposed or ill
491 family members, childcare challenges, and increased demand for services.

- 492 ▪ **Vulnerable Populations:** Vulnerable populations may experience disproportionate harm from a
493 biological incident, including increased risk of infection or disease burden, loss of income, etc.,
494 and may face barriers to implementation of disease prevention/mitigation processes and
495 procedures. These increased risks may stem from use of multi-generational or public housing,
496 lack of access to medical or behavioral health treatment, employment type, and public transport
497 use.

- 498 ▪ **Continuity of Operations (COOP)/Continuity of Government (COG):** The implementation of COOP
499 planning and COG activities may vary depending on the pathogen's impact on the workforce,
500 essential services, etc.

- 501 ▪ **Economic Impacts:** A communicable disease may impact local economies through business
502 closures, capacity limitations, supply chain interruptions, workforce reductions, or resource
503 competition. A large-scale incident may affect national and global markets, supply chains, and
504 production capacities.

- 505 ▪ **MCM Development, Production, and Distribution:** MCM availability, overwhelming public demand,
506 and requests beyond impacted areas may complicate MCM distribution. For pathogens with no
507 pre-established biologic product or drug-based MCMs, development and production may take
508 considerable time.

- 509 ▪ **Significant Resource Shortfalls:** The size, scope, and/or complexity of a biological incident may
510 overwhelm existing local capabilities and resources. Mutual aid agreements with neighboring
511 jurisdictions can provide support prior or in addition to federal resource engagement. Resources
512 may be limited regardless of pathogen. Competition between various governmental levels and
513 the private sector may occur in the absence of coordination to promote judicious resource
514 distribution.

- 515 ▪ **Decontamination:** While most biological agents are inactivated in the environment via natural
516 degradative processes, some pathogens are environmentally persistent and specialized
517 decontamination processes are required to eliminate their threat. Decontamination of buildings
518 or public spaces from such agents could require their long-term or permanent closure.

- 519 ▪ **Public Safety:** Authorities must consider public safety and security during implementation of
520 response and recovery measures (e.g., security at MCM-dispensing areas and at healthcare and
521 public health critical infrastructure).

- 522 ▪ **Waste Management:** Agent identity and pathogen type may have an impact on
523 available/approved waste processing and disposal options; disposal of large quantities of
524 hazardous waste will prove challenging and drain resources.

- 525 ▪ **Fatality Management:** Standard processing mechanisms for hazardous human remains may be
526 overwhelmed by incidents that result in a large number of fatalities. Evidence from human
527 remains may need to be recovered and preserved as part of ongoing law enforcement
528 investigations. In addition, planning must also account for hazardous animal remains and any
529 related special considerations.

- 530 ▪ **Achieving Recovery Outcomes:** Recovery of the impacted populations and environments may
531 take an extended amount of time and involve restoring critical infrastructure, rebuilding public
532 trust, supporting economic recovery, and disposing of hazardous waste, among other priorities.

533 Considerations such as these appear throughout this document. Planners should keep them in
534 mind while developing preparedness plans and activities appropriate for their community.

535 Relevant Authorities and Legislation

536 In a biological incident, the following declarations may be issued and may influence the response
537 and recovery to the incident. It is important to consider that many prior biological incidents have
538 been addressed without any of the following declarations. States or territories can issue their own
539 public health emergency declarations at their discretion, and SLTT declarations are likely to occur
540 with greater frequency than any of the national or international declarations in the box below.

541 **Table 1: Relevant Declarations**

Type of Declaration	Issuing Entity	Authority
Declaration of Public Health Emergency	Secretary of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS)	Section 319 of the Public Health Services Act (PHSA)
Presidential Declaration of a National Emergency	President of the United States of America	Section 201 of the National Emergency Act
Emergency or Major Disaster Declaration	President of the United States of America	Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (Stafford Act)
Declaration of Public Health Emergency of International Concern (PHEIC)	World Health Organization (WHO)	International Health Regulations (IHR) (2005)

542 When response and recovery resource needs extend past the capabilities of state, local, tribal, or
543 territorial officials, federal support will be required. Several levels of federal emergency declarations

544 can help support response and recovery, ranging from a public health emergency declaration by the
545 Secretary of HHS to an emergency or major disaster declaration under the Stafford Act granted by
546 the President upon request from a state governor, tribal leader, or other designated official. For
547 detailed descriptions of declaration types and more information on federal response and recovery
548 support for a biological incident, readers are directed to the BIA. For additional explanation of
549 funding sources for Stafford and non-Stafford incidents, readers are directed to Appendix C of this
550 document.

551 In December 2006, Congress passed and the President signed the Pandemic and All-Hazards
552 Preparedness Act (PAHPA), Public Law No. 109-417. Among other things, this act amended the
553 Public Health Service Act to establish within HHS a new Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and
554 Response. It also provided new authorities for a number of programs, including the advanced
555 development and acquisitions of medical countermeasures, and called for the establishment of a
556 quadrennial National Health Security Strategy. Subsequently, the Pandemic and All-Hazards
557 Preparedness Reauthorization Act (2013) and the Pandemic and All-Hazards Preparedness and
558 Advancing Innovation Act (PAHPAIA, 2019) were signed into law and build on work undertaken to
559 advance national health security. These acts authorized funding for public health and medical
560 preparedness programs, such as the Hospital Preparedness Program (HPP) and the Public Health
561 Emergency Preparedness (PHEP) Cooperative Agreement and amended the Public Health Service Act
562 (PHSA) to grant state health departments greatly needed flexibility in dedicating staff resources to
563 meeting critical community needs in a disaster. Most recently, PAHPAIA also authorized new public
564 health and medical preparedness programs for regional healthcare preparedness and military and
565 civilian partnerships.

566 Planners are directed to HHS CDC's PHEP Cooperative Agreement and HHS ASPR's HPP for more
567 information on how these initiatives can support collaboration between emergency management,
568 public health, and HCCs in SLTT jurisdictions. HPP focuses on building HCCs, which incentivize
569 diverse and often competitive healthcare organizations with differing priorities to work together to
570 prepare for and respond to events that threaten the public's health. Serving as both coordinating
571 entities and response bodies, HCCs ensure that their members have the necessary medical
572 equipment and supplies, real-time information, communication systems, and trained personnel to
573 respond to emergencies.¹⁶ Each HCC must include four core members: acute care hospitals, public
574 health agencies, emergency medical services (EMS), and emergency management agencies.¹⁷

¹⁶ Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR). (2018, August 17). *Hospitals and Health Care Coalitions* [Fact sheet]. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS).
<https://www.phe.gov/Preparedness/news/events/NPM18/Pages/health-care-community.aspx>

¹⁷ Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR). (2021, April). *Health Care Coalitions (HCCs)* [Fact sheet].
<https://www.phe.gov/Preparedness/planning/hpp/Documents/HCC-FactSheet-April2021-508.pdf>

575



Refer To

576

577

578

579

580

- HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health* (2018) for additional information on public health preparedness and guidance on planning, operationalization, and evaluation of SLTT capabilities across 15 areas, including organization, prioritization, and resource investment decisions

581

582

- HHS CDC *Public Health 101 Series* provides an introduction to public health and is designed for persons new to public health

583

- HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness (PHEP) Cooperative Agreement* webpage

584

- HHS ASPR *Hospital Preparedness Program (HPP)* webpage

585

586

- HHS ASPR TRACIE Topic Collection: *Healthcare Coalition Resources* webpage for more information on HCC resources

587

588

- FEMA *Biological Incident Annex to the Response & Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plan* (2017)

589

590

591

592

- This information is supplemental to the FIOPs and other subordinate plans. The BIA and accompanying documents do not alter or impede the ability of any state, local, tribal, territorial, insular area, or federal agency to execute authorities or meet responsibilities under applicable laws, executive orders, and directives

593 KPF 1: Detect and Characterize the Threat

594 Timely detection and accurate characterization of a biological incident are key components of an
595 effective response. Early actions such as incident detection and characterization, resource
596 mobilization, and disease containment can save lives. In the context of a malicious use of a
597 biological agent, prompt detection and precise characterization can also help prevent and/or
598 mitigate a potential follow-on incident. Biological incidents are primarily detected through human
599 health surveillance systems and environmental monitoring barring the presence of an overt
600 indication (e.g., a white powder, intelligence, an eyewitness to an intentional release,
601 announcement of attack, etc.). While public health officials will primarily lead detection and
602 characterization activities, emergency management planners should be familiar with the
603 processes for detection and characterization and how to support these efforts to mitigate
604 incident impacts, maximize the safety of responders, forecast potential resource coordination
605 needs, and determine how the specifics of the biological agent or disease involved may affect
606 various aspects of the response under their charge.

607 1.1 Initial Detection

608 Initial detection is an activity essential to limiting the harm caused by the incident and triggering the
609 appropriate response. Many biological agents can take days to cause symptoms, contributing to a
610 delay in incident detection. Similarities of symptoms across pathogens may contribute to delays in
611 detection or initial mischaracterization of an incident, such as detection of emerging diseases or
612 intentional attacks during annual flu season. In some instances, detection may occur only after the
613 outbreak/incident is well underway, resulting in numerous infections prior to initial detection.

614 Detection strategies include:

- 615 ▪ **Passive surveillance** is a system by which hospitals, clinics, and/or other sources submit reports
616 to a health department. Relatively inexpensive, passive surveillance is used to monitor
617 individuals and populations for signs that a disease outbreak may be occurring. Data may be
618 incomplete, and timeliness of reporting may vary, as passive surveillance depends on individuals
619 in various institutions to submit information.¹⁸
- 620 ▪ **Active surveillance** is a system by which health department staff regularly contact healthcare
621 facilities or members of the public to inquire about health conditions. Relatively expensive
622 compared to passive surveillance, active surveillance provides more accurate and timely

¹⁸ Nsubuga, P., White, M.E., Thacker, S.B., Anderson, M.A., Blount, S.B., Broome, C.V., Chiller, T.M., Espitia, V., Imtiaz, R., Sosin, D., Stroup, D.F., Tauxe, R.V., Vijayaraghavan, M., & Trostle, M. (2006). Public Health Surveillance: A Tool for Targeting and Monitoring Interventions. In: Jamison DT, Breman JG, Measham AR, et al., (Eds.), *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries*. 2nd edition. Co-published by The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development/The World Bank and Oxford University Press. <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK11770/>

623 information.¹⁹ Active surveillance also includes systems that are designed to detect biological
 624 agents in the environment (generally air or water). They offer quick recognition of a biological
 625 incident, but their widespread use faces many technological and practical hurdles. Examples
 626 include identification from BioWatch, water system monitoring, etc.

627 **Table 2: Comparing Types of Public Health Surveillance²⁰**

Passive Surveillance	Active Surveillance
Diseases are reported by healthcare providers	Health agencies contact health providers, seeking reports
Simple and inexpensive	Ensures more complete reporting of conditions
Limited by incompleteness of reporting and variability of quality	Used in conjunction with specific epidemiologic investigation

628 To best protect the population, a combination of both active and passive detection systems, analysis
 629 of human health effects, monitoring signs in the environment and nearby animals, and observing
 630 other features of an incident should be employed at the community level, whenever possible. Many
 631 surveillance systems are designed to detect an incident following the occurrence of symptoms of
 632 disease, and it is possible that an incident may be well underway before it is detected. With the
 633 assistance of detection systems and effective communication, authorities can recognize biological
 634 incidents and initiate an appropriate response as early as possible. (Refer to [Appendix B](#) for more
 635 information on sources of incident detection and examples of initial information received,
 636 information verification process, and associated methods of information sharing.)

637 **1.1.1 COMMON CHALLENGES FOR PASSIVE AND ACTIVE SURVEILLANCE ACTIVITIES**

638 Correctly identifying the pathogen causing an outbreak is a complex process. Detecting infectious
 639 diseases in a timely manner can be difficult in both passive and active surveillance systems.
 640 Common challenges facing both types of surveillance activities include:

- 641 ■ The incubation period of a disease is the lag time between exposure to the pathogen and the
 642 onset of symptoms. In patients who have been infected but have not yet become sick, this lag

¹⁹ Nsubuga, P., White, M.E., Thacker, S.B., Anderson, M.A., Blount, S.B., Broome, C.V., Chiller, T.M., Espitia, V., Imtiaz, R., Sosin, D., Stroup, D.F., Tauxe, R.V., Vijayaraghavan, M., & Trostle, M. (2006). Public Health Surveillance: A Tool for Targeting and Monitoring Interventions. In: Jamison DT, Breman JG, Measham AR, et al., (Eds.), *Disease Control Priorities in Developing Countries*. 2nd edition. Co-published by The International Bank for Reconstruction and Development/The World Bank and Oxford University Press. <https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK11770/>

²⁰ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (n.d.) *Public Health 101 Series: Introduction to Public Health Surveillance*. Division of Scientific Education and Professional Development. <https://www.cdc.gov/training/publichealth101/documents/introduction-to-surveillance.pdf>

643 can delay testing, treatment, and prophylaxis that may mitigate illness. Exposed individuals will
644 continue to circulate and, in the case of a contagious disease, possibly expose others.

645 ▪ Many infectious diseases start with general symptoms and require additional testing to
646 determine the definitive cause of the illness.

647 ▪ Laboratory results that conclusively identify the biological agent may not be available for days.

648 ▪ Diagnostic and screening methods for new or emerging pathogens may not exist.

649 ▪ Wide variety of agents (e.g., bacteria, viruses, parasites, fungi, or biological toxins) precludes any
650 system being able to detect them all.

651 **1.1.2 PASSIVE SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS: HUMAN HEALTH**

652 Human health surveillance systems continuously monitor for changes in natural patterns and
653 presence of disease, an increase in the number or severity of cases of a specific disease, unusually
654 severe cases of a disease, unusual geographic spread of disease, and unseasonal clusters of a
655 disease. Surveillance systems rely on the continuous collection, analysis, and interpretation of
656 health-related data.²¹ These data include traditional case-reporting of diseases that may present a
657 public health threat and are required to be reported by law to public health authorities by local
658 physicians and hospitals.²²

659 In addition to traditional methods, syndromic surveillance systems are also used to track disease
660 indicators that occur before clinical diagnosis, such as chief complaint data from urgent medical
661 visits, over-the-counter medication purchases, school absenteeism rates, and keyword (e.g., “fever,”
662 “vomit”) presence on social media platforms. Information from these systems may provide the first
663 indication that a biological incident has occurred. For example, doctors’ offices, urgent care facilities,
664 and/or emergency departments may report an influx of patients with similar and/or unusual
665 symptoms, or syndromic surveillance systems may report an uncharacteristically high number of
666 over-the-counter flu medicine purchases. Syndromic surveillance works best when local doctors,
667 hospitals, pharmacies, schools, etc., are aware, alert, and reporting activities in their localities. In
668 addition, mortality surveillance and unusual death reporting also play roles in detection.

²¹ World Health Organization (WHO). (2022). *Universal Health Coverage*.
http://www.who.int/topics/public_health_surveillance/en/

²² Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2022, February 8). *MMWR: Summary of Notifiable Infectious Diseases*. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/mmwr_nd/



669

670
671
672

Figure 5: National Syndromic Surveillance Program (NSSP) Biosense Platform, a secure integrated electronic health information system with standardized analytic tools and processes²³

673 Surveillance system collection strategies and outputs vary by state and may provide immediate data,
674 such as during active investigations, or may experience delays of weeks before passive reporting of
675 data for some diseases are available. An example of a national syndromic surveillance system is the
676 CDC's National Syndromic Surveillance Program (NSSP), which provides public health officials with a
677 timely system for detecting, understanding, and monitoring health events. By tracking symptoms of
678 patients in emergency departments – before a diagnosis is confirmed – public health can detect
679 unusual levels of illness to determine whether a response is warranted.

680 1.1.3 PASSIVE SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS: VETERINARY HEALTH

681 Veterinary surveillance systems may also provide an early warning that a biological incident has
682 occurred. Some pathogens are zoonotic, meaning that they can spread between animals and
683 humans.²⁴ One Health surveillance where human, animal, and environmental surveillance systems
684 are linked would promote early recognition of an incident caused by a zoonotic pathogen. In some
685 cases, infected animals (e.g., wildlife, livestock) may act as a sentinel for an outbreak, providing the
686 first indication that something out of the ordinary is happening. In all cases, communication between
687 veterinary and public health communities is essential to biological incident detection. As with human
688 disease surveillance systems, the timeliness of data collection by veterinary surveillance systems
689 and communication with public health officials may determine if an unfolding disease outbreak can
690 be mitigated quickly and effectively.

691 The introduction of WNV to the U.S. in 1999 provides an illustrative example of the utility of
692 monitoring animal health for the prevention and mitigation of zoonotic disease outbreaks. One
693 Health collaboration between public health epidemiologists investigating the cause of illness for

²³ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2022). *National Outbreak Reporting System (NORS)* [Online image]. <https://www.cdc.gov/norsdashboard/>; CDC. (2019). *NORS* [Online image]. <https://www.cdc.gov/healthywater/surveillance/nors.html>

²⁴ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases (NCEZID). (2021, July 1). *Zoonotic Diseases*. <https://www.cdc.gov/onehealth/basics/zoonotic-diseases.html>

694 several elderly people developing signs of encephalitis and veterinary pathologists investigating
695 the cause of death for rising numbers of birds dying in the same area ultimately led to the
696 identification of WNV as the cause of illness in both species and as an emerging disease. WNV's
697 introduction instigated the largest human encephalitis epidemic of its kind seen in the U.S., and
698 WNV remains the most frequent cause of insect-borne disease in the U.S. Since WNV is
699 transmitted by mosquitoes to both bird and human populations, monitoring infections in wild
700 and/or captive birds can help determine whether WNV is active in a region, and in some cases,
701 provide a quantitative index of risk for human infections. Monitoring birds is especially important
702 because human case reports are lagging indicators of risk, occurring weeks after infection.



703

Figure 6: New York State wildlife pathologist examines a dead crow for traces of the WNV in 1999²⁵

704
705

706 Testing of animal samples to confirm disease may be performed by USDA Animal and Plant Health
707 Inspection Service (APHIS)-approved state, university, and private animal diagnostic laboratories; the
708 CDC; the National Veterinary Services Laboratories (NVSL), the national animal health reference
709 laboratory for animal diseases; or members of the National Animal Health Laboratory Network
710 (NAHLN), which can test large numbers of samples for specific disease agents originating from food
711 animals.

712



Refer To

- 713 ▪ The APHIS laboratory portal for information on the NVSL, the NAHLN, and other
714 laboratories that can provide suspected animal disease outbreak testing services.
- 715 ▪ CDC One Health and Healthy Pets, Healthy People webpages for information on zoonotic
716 diseases and related One Health issues in livestock, companion animals, and wildlife

²⁵ Jennings, D. (n.d.). [A New York State wildlife pathologist examines a dead crow] [Photograph].
<https://source.wustl.edu/2015/11/whatever-happened-to-west-nile/>

- 717 ▪ For issues related to livestock and poultry, refer to the *National Food and Agriculture*
718 *Incident Annex to the Response and Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plans*
719 (FAIA; FIOPs) (2019)

720 **1.1.4 SPECIFIC CHALLENGES FOR PASSIVE SURVEILLANCE ACTIVITIES**

721 While passive surveillance systems have numerous benefits, they also present specific challenges.
722 Many factors delay detection of biological incidents and proper agent identification via passive
723 systems, such as:

- 724 ▪ The participation of human and veterinary health providers in disease monitoring and reporting
725 activities directly affects the robustness of surveillance systems.
- 726 ▪ Case reporting does not happen in real time, and there may be a delay before illnesses are
727 captured by a surveillance system.
- 728 ▪ Syndromic surveillance systems (such as those that look at sick days, over-the-counter drug
729 sales, keyword searches, etc.) can be subject to natural distortions.

730 Recognizing these challenges, early detection and accurate identification are often key to ensuring
731 appropriate treatment and mitigation strategies are implemented with as quickly as possible as
732 possible to prevent illnesses and save lives. Due to the importance of early detection, the homeland
733 security and public health communities are continually working toward overcoming these challenges.

734 **1.1.5 ACTIVE SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS: EPIDEMIOLOGIC INVESTIGATIONS**

735 When an outbreak is suspected, public health department personnel may initiate an epidemiologic
736 investigation to determine the cause. A field investigation has ten steps:²⁶

- 737 1. Prepare for field work.
- 738 2. Confirm the diagnosis.
- 739 3. Determine the existence of an outbreak.
- 740 4. Identify and count cases (i.e., create a case definition and develop a line listing).
- 741 5. Tabulate and orient the data in terms of time, place, and person (i.e., descriptive epidemiology).
- 742 6. Consider whether control measures can be implemented now. (Note: control measures should
743 be considered again after more systematic studies are completed.)

²⁶ King, M.E., Bensyl, D.M., Goodman, R.A., & Rasmussen, S.A. (2018). Conducting a Field Investigation. In S.A. Rasmussen & Goodman, R.A. (Eds.), *The CDC Field Epidemiology Manual*. Oxford University Press. https://www.cdc.gov/eis/field-epi-manual/chapters/Field-Investigation.html#anchor_1543842271

- 744 7. Develop and test hypotheses.
- 745 8. Plan for more systematic studies.
- 746 9. Implement, if not already done, and evaluate control and preventive measures.
- 747 10. Communicate findings (i.e., summarize investigation for requesting authority and prepare written
- 748 reports).

749 During an outbreak investigation, public health departments may use a practice called contact

750 tracing to identify and notify people who have been exposed to someone with an infectious disease.

751 Epidemiologists reach out to exposed people to let them know they've been in close contact with an

752 infected person and to provide information and support to help them keep themselves and their

753 loved ones safe.²⁷



754

755 **Figure 7: Contact tracing may be complicated and slowed by individuals or populations who**

756 **have traveled to other states or countries since exposure²⁸**

757 By developing strong collaborative relationships, SLTT emergency management personnel and public

758 health personnel can work together during outbreak investigations to support implementation of

759 control measures and communication of findings to the public.

760 1.1.6 ACTIVE SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS: ENVIRONMENTAL MONITORING

761 Environmental monitoring systems can provide early warning in the event of a biological agent

762 release and enable detection of a biological incident before exposed individuals begin to show

763 symptoms and seek treatment. One example of such a system has been the Department of

764 Homeland Security (DHS)'s BioWatch program, a federally managed, locally operated air monitoring

765 system that tests for selected pathogens. The BioWatch program operates in more than 30

²⁷ California Department of Public Health. (2022, January 5). *What is Contact Tracing?*. <https://www.cdph.ca.gov/Programs/CID/DCDC/Pages/COVID-19-Contact-Tracing.aspx>

²⁸ Mackie, B. (2020, May 11). *Delaware National Guard to assist Division of Public Health in fight against COVID-19* [Photograph]. DVIDS Hub. <https://www.dvidshub.net/image/6205607/delaware-national-guard-assist-division-public-health-fight-against-covid-19>

766 jurisdictions across the U.S., including in at least one city in every FEMA region. BioWatch collectors
767 sample air continuously and particles are collected onto a removable filter. Typically, filters are
768 retrieved from the collectors every 24 hours and are transported to local laboratories for processing
769 and analysis. Following identification of particular threat agents, additional samples can be taken to
770 determine agent viability and concentration. Based on testing results, jurisdictional response
771 activities including the notification of local and federal entities will be initiated as appropriate.²⁹ The
772 Biological Detection for the 21st Century program, which is under development, seeks to provide
773 faster detection and other improved capabilities.³⁰ (Refer to [Appendix A](#) for more information on
774 BioWatch.)



775

776

Figure 8: BioWatch air-monitoring device

777 **Drinking water system monitoring**

778 Drinking water that is not properly treated or disinfected or that travels through an improperly
779 maintained distribution system may pose a communitywide health risk as a potential source of
780 pathogen exposure.³¹ In fact, the CDC's most recent report of drinking water-associated outbreak

²⁹ Institute of Medicine and National Research Council. (2011). *BioWatch and Public Health Surveillance: Evaluating Systems for the Early Detection of Biological Threats: Abbreviated Version*. National Academies Press. <https://doi.org/10.17226/12688>

³⁰ Department of Homeland Security (DHS). (2020). *DHS Biosurveillance Systems*. Science and Technology Directorate and Countering Weapons of Mass Destruction Office. https://www.dhs.gov/sites/default/files/publications/st_cwmd_-_dhs_biosurveillance_systems.pdf

³¹ U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). (2004). *Understanding the Safe Drinking Water Act*. <https://www.epa.gov/sites/default/files/2015-04/documents/epa816f04030.pdf>

781 surveillance data (obtained through NORS) indicates dozens of annual outbreaks in the U.S.,
782 resulting in the sickening of hundreds of individuals and a few deaths.³²

783 Water system monitoring is a complex process involving federal requirement setting, state inspection
784 and enforcement, and local utility tracking and reporting. Pursuant to the Safe Drinking Water Act as
785 amended in 1996, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) requires that public water
786 systems protect drinking water from microbial contaminants (e.g., *Cryptosporidium*, *Giardia*,
787 *Legionella*, coliform bacteria, and viruses). Under this law, local water systems are directed to
788 monitor for selected common contaminants of concern as well as substances that could be sources
789 of pathogens, such as animal wastes. Additionally, toxins produced by harmful algal blooms are
790 another common cause source of waterborne disease outbreaks that often are actively monitored.
791 Chlorine-based disinfectants are generally used to protect public health in water systems; at the
792 same time, levels of disinfectant byproducts also must be controlled.^{33,34} Some non-utility sources,
793 such as private wells, river sources, and self-contained sources (such as some hospitals, etc.) fall
794 outside of existing monitoring systems. In addition, intentional contamination of a water supply is a
795 potential threat that SLTT planners should consider. Intentional contamination of a building's water
796 supply (e.g., schools, offices, etc.) could sicken many and create fear throughout the community.



797

798

Figure 9: James W. Jardine Water Purification Plant in Chicago³⁵

³² Benedict, K.M., Reses, H., Vigar, M., Roth, D.M., Roberts, V.A., Mattioli, M., Cooley, L.A., Hilborn, E.D., Wade, T.J., Fullerton, K.E., Yoder, J.S., Hill, V.R. (2017, November 10). Surveillance for waterborne disease outbreaks associated with drinking water – United States, 2013–2014. *Morbidity and Mortality Weekly Report*, 66(44), 1216–1221. https://www.cdc.gov/mmwr/volumes/66/wr/mm6644a3.htm?s_cid=mm6644a3_w

³³ U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). (2022, January 26). *National Primary Drinking Water Regulations*. <https://www.epa.gov/ground-water-and-drinking-water/national-primary-drinking-water-regulations>

³⁴ U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA). (2010). *Comprehensive Disinfectants and Disinfection Byproducts Rules (Stage 1 and Stage 2): Quick Reference Guide*. Office of Water. <https://nepis.epa.gov/Exe/ZyPDF.cgi?Dockey=P100C8XW.txt>

³⁵ Trevino, J. (n.d.). [James W. Jardine Water Purification Plant in Chicago] [Photograph]. <https://drinkingwater123.metroplanning.org/meet-your-water-an-introduction>

799 When monitoring or credible intelligence indicates that public health may be in danger, water
800 suppliers are required to notify their local public health department. Together, public health
801 organizations can determine an appropriate course of action; such solutions may include changing
802 water sources, altering treatment, temporary system shutdowns, and/or issuing drinking water
803 advisories. Moreover, the activation of drinking water advisories and the establishment of alternate
804 water supplies are a core part of local emergency planning in most areas of the U.S., allowing for
805 maintaining public safety while characterizing the extent of the drinking water threat.



Refer To

- 807 ▪ EPA *A Water Security Handbook: Planning for and Responding to Drinking Water*
808 *Contamination Threats and Incidents* (2006) for more information on planning for
809 incidents involving a contaminated water supply.

810 1.1.7 SPECIFIC CHALLENGES FOR ACTIVE SURVEILLANCE SYSTEMS

811 Although environmental monitoring systems can play an important role in incident detection, they
812 face substantial challenges. Detection of biological agents by such systems is difficult for many
813 reasons, including:

- 814 ▪ Inability to detect novel or emerging pathogens outside of the environmental monitoring system's
815 specific targeted configuration
- 816 ▪ Insufficient concentration of biological agent leading to device being unable to detect sample
817 (false negative)
- 818 ▪ Inability to distinguish between harmful and benign pathogens, intentionally released and
819 naturally occurring pathogens, and infectious and noninfectious pathogens



820
821 **Figure 10: Sampling to determine contamination**

822 In addition, there are logistical, analytical, and cost constraints that preclude the widespread use of
823 these monitoring systems. Environmental monitoring systems are expensive and require much
824 maintenance to provide meaningful surveillance for most of the U.S. Also, responding effectively to a
825 biological attack is costly, including the disruption and turmoil such a response may cause.
826 Therefore, given that biological attacks are incredibly rare, a monitoring system must be highly
827 certain that an attack, rather than a benign incident, is taking place.

828 1.2 Response Initiation

829 The goal of disease reporting and pathogen recognition systems is to provide adequate warning to
830 communities and stakeholders and enable them to initiate an appropriate response. To ensure
831 surveillance system signals trigger a proportionate response, planners should include surveillance
832 systems within plans for a holistic biological incident recognition and response Concept of
833 Operations (CONOPS). The response itself should be led by appropriate knowledgeable entities and
834 include collaboration and coordination among local public health departments, emergency
835 management agencies, and HCCs; these entities will work with the education, transportation,
836 environmental, and housing sectors to support impacted communities.

837 **Key Objectives for Multi-Jurisdictional Emergency Management in a Biological Incident**

838 Confirm whether the disease outbreak constitutes a real or potential biological incident and
839 consider whether the incident may involve an emerging pathogen and/or develop into a large-
840 scale incident with the potential to overwhelm federal, state, local, tribal, and territorial (FSLTT)
841 public health and medical resources.

- 842 ▪ Has an index case been suspected or confirmed and reported to appropriate SLTT public
843 health entities?
- 844 ▪ Have healthcare facilities seen an influx of patients with similar disease symptoms indicating
845 an emerging pathogen?
- 846 ▪ Has a novel or atypical pathogen been identified by overseas laboratories or FSLTT public
847 health entities (e.g., LRN)?

848 Ensure multiple surveillance and detection systems at all FSLTT levels are coordinated to inform
849 public health and emergency management authorities in a timely manner so that appropriate
850 and prompt decisions can be made to protect the public and critical resources.

851 Ensure ongoing coordination and exchange of credible scientific information about an emerging
852 biological incident between FSLTT and private sector entities (e.g., hospitals, urgent care
853 facilities, etc.).

854 Initiate efforts to perform infectious disease modeling as well as atmospheric outdoor or indoor
855 release modeling to understand potential public health impacts to susceptible communities and
856 critical infrastructure. (Refer to [Planning, Decision-Support, and Modeling Resources for
857 Biological Incidents](#) section of this document for more information on modeling and decision-
858 support considerations.)

859



Coordination Opportunity

860
861
862
863

Work with public health and environmental health experts, community leaders, and stakeholders to support decisions. Facilitate collaboration of public health, animal health, and emergency management communities to share surveillance results to aid biological incident detection and facilitate a timely and effective response.

864



Action Item

865
866
867
868
869
870
871
872

- Exercise biological incident recognition and response CONOPS and associated procedures in coordination with private sector, public health, and public safety agency staff.
- Connect with public health to determine the capabilities of active and passive detection systems in your jurisdiction. Determine the history and challenges of these systems to better understand how they should be incorporated into your plan.
- Seek out training and exercise opportunities with other FSLTT partners regarding surveillance systems to ensure the proper support from emergency management is included across plans.

873

What will you need to know?

874
875
876
877
878
879
880
881
882
883
884
885
886
887

- Which human and veterinary health surveillance systems operate in your region?
 - What do they do?
 - How do they report?
 - To whom do they report?
- Which diseases are reportable in your region?
- Which pathogens are endemic in your region?
- What environmental monitoring systems exist in your region?
 - What do they do?
 - How do they report?
 - To whom do they report?
 - What percentage of the population is covered and where?
- How and when will emergency management be engaged in response if a biological agent is identified by active or passive surveillance systems and verified by your public health authorities?

- 888 What support for resource management and stakeholder engagement can emergency
889 managers provide for the public health authorities in your jurisdiction?

890 **1.3 Incident Characterization**

891 Characterization involves determining the extent of the incident and verifying the identity, viability,
892 and infectivity of the involved pathogen. Relevant, timely, and accurate incident characterization is
893 important because it provides situational awareness, informs decision-making, and facilitates
894 efficient response. Properly characterizing the incident will help reduce morbidity and mortality,
895 ensure the effective use of resources, prevent the spread of contamination and occurrence of
896 secondary infections, and reduce the overall economic impact of the incident.

897 Full characterization of a biological incident is unlikely to be immediately feasible. Incident
898 characterization involves collecting, analyzing, and synthesizing data from numerous sources and is
899 an iterative process; as new information becomes available, characterization of the incident is
900 refined. Incident characterization may take hours (e.g., pathogen identification), days (e.g., exposure
901 areas and/or populations), or months (e.g., attack and secondary attack rates, lethality, susceptibility
902 to countermeasures) to accomplish. Therefore, in the early stages of a biological incident, decisions
903 will likely need to be made without complete information.

904 **1.3.1 LABORATORY TESTING**

905 Pathogen/disease identification and characterization, source identification, and geographic
906 dispersion are essential components of incident characterization. Clinical and environmental
907 samples will be tested and genetically typed where possible to determine their provenance (whether
908 natural or manufactured), virulence, and best treatment options.

909 Testing of patient samples begins locally at public health laboratories and clinical laboratories.
910 Depending on the nature of the incident, clinical sample testing from suspect cases by CDC's
911 Laboratory Response Network for Biological Threats (LRN-B) may be required to verify the identity,
912 viability, and infectivity of the involved pathogen. LRN-B's mission is to provide a rapid laboratory
913 response to biological threats to inform critical decisions about public health and safety, and it was
914 established to facilitate quick and accurate detection of biothreat agents and emerging infectious
915 diseases in the U.S.³⁶

³⁶ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2019, April 10). *LRN-B Enables a Rapid Laboratory Response to Biological Threats* [Fact sheet]. <https://emergency.cdc.gov/lrn/lrnbfactsheet.asp>

916



Refer To

917

- CDC [Laboratory Response Network for Biological Threats](#) (LRN-B) webpage for more information on LRN-B's tiered structure including national labs (CDC, U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases, and the Naval Medical Research Center), reference labs (~130 state and local public health, military, veterinary, agriculture, food, and water testing labs), and sentinel labs (private sector clinical labs).

918

919

920

921

922

Laboratories that can support testing to address agent identification and characterization needs may be represented within the [Integrated Consortium of Laboratory Networks](#) (ICLN)—a federal partnership between DHS, Department of Defense (DoD), HHS, USDA, Department of Energy, Department of Interior (DOI), Department of Justice (DOJ), Department of State (DOS), and the EPA—to coordinate laboratory response capabilities during a crisis. The ICLN includes some of the following networks: DoD Laboratory Network, Environmental Response Laboratory Network, LRN, NAHLN, and the Veterinary Laboratory Investigation and Response Network.

923

924

925

926

927

928



929

930

Figure 11: Scientists analyzing incident samples

931

While testing occurs to determine the agent, a case definition will be used by public health officials to help identify potential cases so that they can be investigated, and their exposures reviewed to identify a source. Separate guidance will be developed to assist healthcare providers in diagnosis and treatment of suspected clinical cases. During early phases of a biological incident caused by a novel pathogen, testing capabilities may be inadequate and case definitions become very important. Even when testing capability is available, certain testing methods may pick up lingering disease traits (e.g., prolonged positive polymerase chain reaction) that do not indicate real, active disease, and case definitions are still required for both clinical and public health decision-making.

932

933

934

935

936

937

938

939

Case Definition

940

A case definition is a set of standard criteria for classifying if a person has a particular disease, syndrome, or other health condition. Case definitions are typically decided by an epidemiologist within a public health office and change over time as more information is obtained. Some case definitions, particularly those used for national surveillance, have been developed and adopted as national standards that ensure comparability. A case definition consists of clinical criteria

941

942

943

944

945 and, sometimes, limitations on time, place, and person. The clinical criteria usually include
946 confirmatory laboratory tests, if available, or combinations of symptoms (subjective complaints),
947 signs (objective physical findings), and other findings. Case definitions used during outbreak
948 investigations are more likely to specify limits on time, place, and/or person than those used for
949 surveillance.³⁷

950 In the event of an intentional biological attack, determining the source and geographic dispersion of
951 the agent will assist public health and law enforcement investigators in determining the scope of the
952 incident and in identifying potentially exposed people. The geographic origin of the incident may not
953 be readily apparent; moreover, because days may elapse between exposure to the agent and the
954 onset of illness, the first detected cases may not be proximate to the location of the initial infection
955 or release. The extent of contamination is identified through means such as epidemiological
956 investigations and environmental sampling. Data are fed into national models for narrowing the
957 range of likely release points and amount of agent used (Refer to the Planning, Decision Support,
958 and Modeling Resources for Biological Incidents of this document).



959 Coordination Opportunity

960 Develop relationships with federal, state, regional, and local agencies with a role in biological
961 incident response. Identify partners that can provide subject matter expertise to aid in
962 pathogen identification and site assessment. Review past biological incidents in your
963 jurisdiction and consider:

- 964 ▪ Which relationships/partners are key to a successful response?
- 965 ▪ Which relationships need strengthening?
- 966 ▪ How does all relevant data come together, and how is it used to inform the initial response,
967 including public messaging, resource coordination, etc.?

968 Coordinate with public health authorities to identify laboratories (e.g., state and local public
969 health, academic hospital, non-academic hospital, and independent labs) in your jurisdiction
970 and to determine capabilities and capacity for response.



971 Action Item

972 Work with public health authorities to establish support within plans related to incident
973 detection and characterization for:

³⁷ Center for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2021, April 16). *Surveillance Case Definitions for Current and Historical Conditions*. National Notifiable Diseases Surveillance System (NNDSS) Division of Health Informatics and Surveillance. <https://ndc.services.cdc.gov/>

- 974 ▪ Determining the extent of spread of the biological agent
- 975 ▪ Additional resources needed for incident characterization
- 976 ▪ Stakeholder engagement and communication to the public
- 977 ▪ Incorporation of modeling tools and associated considerations

978 **What will you need to know?**

- 979 What is the case definition of the disease to inform healthcare providers?
- 980 What testing capabilities and capacities are available within your jurisdiction or will require
- 981 coordination with resources outside of your jurisdiction? How can emergency managers plan
- 982 to facilitate resource procurement or coordination when needed?

983 **1.3.2 CHARACTERIZATION IN WATER CONTAMINATION INCIDENTS**

984 In drinking water contamination incidents, identification of the exposure route, the contaminant
985 itself, and the contaminant source play a critical role in reducing the incident’s public health impact.
986 Speedy and accurate symptom recognition are critical for supporting efforts to identify contaminated
987 water, develop mitigation measures, and guide the use of appropriate medical countermeasures for
988 humans and animals.

989 The exposure route may be identified first from a combination of epidemiological investigations,
990 exposure history, clinical diagnosis, and laboratory confirmation. Environmental and laboratory
991 investigations of the potentially contaminated water will also be needed, along with review of the
992 water system to understand any operational lapses. For cases in which adverse health effects occur
993 soon after exposure, the association of symptoms with drinking water may be considered by persons
994 exposed. For cases in which adverse health effects occur well after exposure/ingestion (hours later),
995 the association of illness with the public water system may be more difficult to determine and will
996 rely more heavily on public health investigations to determine the source of exposure. Thus, details
997 surrounding the exposure route can provide some insight into the magnitude of avoidable exposures.



998

999

Figure 12: Contaminated water system sampling³⁸

1000 When a water system is suspected to be compromised, response activities that protect public health
1001 sometimes may be initiated before the contaminant itself is confirmed. Examples of protective
1002 measures include notifying the public of contamination (such as drinking water advisory), providing
1003 alternative water sources, interrupting the public’s access to the water system. Although pathogen
1004 identification may take time, the agent can be determined through laboratory investigations using
1005 clinical data, environmental samples, or contaminated products. (See KPF 3, Control the Spread of
1006 Disease for further discussion of implementation of water system controls.)

1007 **1.4 Federal Assistance for Incident Detection and Characterization**

1008 While biological agent detection will primarily occur by SLTT public health authorities, there are
1009 federal resources that can assist in epidemiological investigations.

1010 **1.4.1 ASSISTANCE IN DISEASE INVESTIGATIONS**

1011 When invited by SLTT jurisdictions, the CDC supports the states in performing disease investigations
1012 and helps to coordinate a national picture. When requested, CDC provides technical assistance to a
1013 SLTT epidemiological investigation, for example, through the use of an Epidemiologic Assistance (Epi-
1014 Aid).³⁹ Epi-Aid is an investigation of urgent public health problems such as disease outbreaks,
1015 unexplained illnesses, or natural or man-made disasters. When a public health authority requests
1016 assistance from CDC, an Epi-Aid enables rapid, short-term (one to three weeks) technical assistance
1017 by Epidemic Intelligence Service officers and other CDC subject matter experts (SMEs), generally
1018 provided onsite. The focus of an Epi-Aid investigation is to assist partners in making rapid, practical
1019 decisions for actions to prevent and control the public health problem.

³⁸ (Left) Tramble, M. (2022, March 24). *Radford Terrace water sampling* [Photograph]. DVIDS Hub. <https://www.dvidshub.net/image/7108127/radford-terrace-water-sampling>; (Right) Tramble, M. (2022, March 30). *JBPHH water sampling* [Photograph]. DVIDS Hub. <https://www.dvidshub.net/image/7117359/jbphh-water-sampling>

³⁹ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2020, May 13). *Epidemiologic Assistance (Epi-Aids) and Field Investigations*. National Center for Environmental Health (NCEH)/Agency for Toxic Substances and Disease Registry (ATSDR). https://www.cdc.gov/nceh/eis/epi_aid.html

1020 Following a One Health approach that recognizes the interconnection between people, animals
1021 (domestic and wild), and their shared environment, CDC provides technical expertise in the One
1022 Health aspects of zoonotic disease investigations and also supports interagency coordination. In the
1023 event an investigation involves a zoonotic disease, CDC will coordinate with USDA APHIS Veterinary
1024 Services (VS) and other relevant partners. When responding to zoonotic disease incidents, animal
1025 health officials will coordinate with public health officials at both the state (e.g., State Animal Health
1026 Official) and federal levels (e.g., Area Veterinarian in Charge, USDA APHIS VS).



Coordination Opportunity

1027

1028 Coordinate with public health authorities to understand how emergency management can
1029 support biological agent detection and characterization activities within plans.



Refer To

1030

- 1031 ▪ CDC Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National
1032 Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health (2018), specifically
1033 Capability 12 – Public Health Laboratory Testing and Capability 13 – Public Health
1034 Surveillance and Epidemiological Investigation
- 1035 ▪ DHS National Response Framework (NRF), Emergency Support Function (ESF) # 10: Oil
1036 and Hazardous Materials Response Annex (2016; Refer to Appendix D for more
1037 information)
- 1038 ▪ DHS National Disaster Recovery Framework (NDRF), Community Planning and Capacity
1039 Building Recovery Support Function (2016; CPCB RSF) for more information on facilitating
1040 recovery through community planning
- 1041 ▪ Appendix 3: Intelligence and Surveillance within the Biological Incident Annex to the
1042 Response and Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plans (2017)

What will you need to know?

1043

- 1044 What federal resources are available to support SLTT response? Who is responsible for
1045 contacting them? What resources may they need when they arrive?

1046 1.4.2 SELECT AGENT AWARENESS

1047 The Federal Select Agent Program is jointly comprised of the CDC Division of Select Agents and
1048 Toxins and the USDA APHIS Division of Agricultural Select Agents and Toxins. The Federal Select
1049 Agent Program oversees the possession, use, and transfer of biological select agents and toxins,
1050 which have the potential to pose a severe threat to public, animal or plant health, or to animal or

1051 plant products. The program greatly enhances the nation’s oversight of the safety and security of
1052 select agents by:⁴⁰

- 1053 ▪ Developing, implementing, and enforcing the Select Agent Regulations
- 1054 ▪ Maintaining a national database
- 1055 ▪ Inspecting entities that possess, use, or transfer select agents
- 1056 ▪ Ensuring that all individuals who work with these agents undergo a security risk assessment
1057 performed by the FBI Criminal Justice Information Services
- 1058 ▪ Providing guidance to regulated entities on achieving compliance to the regulations through the
1059 development of guidance documents, conducting workshops and webinars
- 1060 ▪ Investigation of any incidents in which non-compliance may have occurred

1061 An awareness of these biological agents with the potential to pose a severe threat to both human
1062 and animal health will help SLTT emergency management planners effectively communicate and
1063 collaborate with public health, animal health, and law enforcement partners during planning and
1064 response.



1065 **Refer To**

- 1066 ▪ CDC/USDA APHIS [Federal Select Agent Program](#) website and the [Select Agents and Toxins](#)
1067 [List](#) for more information

1068 **1.4.3 CONSIDERATIONS FOR CRIMINAL INVESTIGATIONS**

1069 The cause of a biological incident (e.g., intentional, accidental, or naturally occurring) may not be
1070 readily apparent, and the possibility that the incident resulted from a criminal act must be
1071 considered. While the FBI leads all criminal investigations related to the intentional threat or actual
1072 use of a biological agent, the interdisciplinary nature of a biological incident means that criminal
1073 investigations will likely occur concurrently with public health investigations. To facilitate this
1074 process, the FBI and CDC developed the concept of joint criminal and epidemiological investigations
1075 in which law enforcement and public health practitioners share information and draw on the unique
1076 expertise of both fields to maximize the effectiveness of characterization and response efforts. When
1077 criminal investigations are necessary, special attention will need to be paid to public
1078 communications strategies, as the public will likely be more distressed by an incident with intent to

⁴⁰ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2021, September 21). *Federal Select Agent Program*. United States Department of Agriculture, Division of Select Agents and Toxins. <https://www.selectagents.gov/index.htm>

1079 harm and the potential for follow-on incidents. To reassure the public, protect the safety of
1080 responders, and take the extreme lack of information into consideration, decision-making and the
1081 initiation of response activities should be approached cautiously and continually reviewed. Following
1082 an attack, the unknowns can quickly accumulate, and access to accurate information will lag
1083 significantly.



1084

1085

Figure 13: FBI evidence team at crime scene

1086



Coordination Opportunity

1087 The jurisdictional law enforcement agencies and the FBI will coordinate criminal investigative
1088 activities with appropriate SLTT and federal partner agencies, such as HHS, DHS, EPA, USDA,
1089 and other partners as appropriate.

1090 Local poison control centers, statewide systems, and the [National Poison Data System](#) are
1091 additional sources of information for agent detection and characterization. Coordinate with
1092 your local centers and state systems to understand how data is monitored and analyzed—
1093 anomalies, unusual clustering of cases, etc.

1094



Refer To

- 1095 ▪ FBI-CDC *Joint Criminal and Epidemiological Investigations Handbook* (2018)
- 1096 ▪ *Terrorism Incident Law Enforcement and Investigation Annex* (2004) to the National
1097 Response Plan
- 1098 ▪ EPA [Publications on Homeland Security Research Topics](#) webpage for additional
1099 information on sampling and analysis, remediation of biological contamination, and water
1100 infrastructure incident response

1101



Action Item

1102
1103

- Check out state, regional, and local plans for incident detection, threat characterization, and coordinated FBI/public health criminal investigation.

1104
1105

- Establish coordinated plans among public health, major healthcare partners, emergency management, and law enforcement.

1106

What will you need to know?

1107

Who will you consult to find out:

1108

- The typical incubation period for the disease?

1109

- Disease symptoms?

1110

- If definitive diagnostic tests are available for this disease?

1111
1112

- If the pathogen has been genetically engineered (e.g., if the pathogen has been modified to be resistant to therapeutics)?

1113
1114

- What type of personal protective equipment (PPE) is required to minimize the likelihood of contracting or spreading the disease?

1115

- If there are pre- and post-exposure prophylactics available?

1116

- The morbidity and mortality rates for this disease?

1117
1118

- If the disease is contagious, should decontamination be part of the planning process for shelters and community reception centers?

1119

- How is that decision made?

1120

- What is the decontamination process and who participates in the process?

1121

- How is the disease transmitted?

1122

- Through direct contact with contaminated fomites, individuals and/or animals?

1123

- Via ingestion or inhalation?

1124

- Via vectors?

1125

- What are the vulnerable populations?

1126
1127

- General population or selected segments (e.g., children, elderly, first responders, first receivers)?

1128

- Animal or human?

1129

- What pathogens are endemic to the area?

1130

- Who will you contact to find out:

1131

- How persistent the pathogen is in the environment?

- 1132 ▪ If the pathogen is susceptible to inactivation (i.e., natural attenuation or decontamination)?
- 1133 ▪ The source of the outbreak?
- 1134 ▪ If the outbreak is limited to human-to-human transmission or if there is environmental
1135 contamination also? If there is environmental contamination, how will you find out the size of
1136 the affected area?
- 1137 ▪ How will you find out what types of facilities (e.g., transit systems, schools, office buildings,
1138 etc.) are in the affected area and if there is critical infrastructure in the affected area?
- 1139 How will you find out if it is a naturally occurring or intentional incident?
- 1140 For a suspected intentional release, how will you know:
- 1141 ▪ When and through what means the agent was dispersed?
- 1142 ▪ What the meteorological conditions were (e.g., temperature, humidity, wind speed and
1143 direction, cloud cover, etc.) at the time of the release?
- 1144 ▪ And if the dispersion was from a point (e.g., sprayer) or moving source (e.g., airplane)?
- 1145 What do first responders and first receivers need to know about a biological incident (e.g.,
1146 agent type, special considerations for treatment, PPE use, etc.)?

1147 **KPF 2: Communicate with External Partners and the** 1148 **Public**

1149 Establishing and maintaining communications during a biological incident are important for two
1150 main reasons. First, communications enable coordinated efforts between response and recovery
1151 personnel and across multiple agencies, jurisdictions, and levels of authority. Second,
1152 communications convey important messages to inform the public on key aspects of the incident,
1153 the nature of the threat, what they can do to protect themselves, and what they can expect in
1154 terms of response and recovery activities in the community. During a biological incident,
1155 communications should provide truthful information and actionable guidance that are crucial for
1156 overcoming the lack of awareness and common misperceptions about the characteristics and
1157 risks of pathogens and diseases. Overall, well-planned and well-exercised communications
1158 systems, strategies, and messaging are critical to achieving response and recovery goals.

1159 **2.1 Communications for a Coordinated Response and Recovery**

1160 During a biological incident, multiple agencies will support response and recovery. Maintaining and
1161 sharing current and accurate information across all levels of government will be a priority.
1162 Coordinated and consistent information sharing will be key to ensuring clear and effective messaging
1163 and alignment of the various agencies and stakeholders involved throughout the response and
1164 recovery environment.

1165 Public information communications for a biological incident should be focused on the following
1166 topics:

- 1167 ▪ Overall description of the situation and outline of governmental response efforts
- 1168 ▪ Instructions on safety measures and risk guidance based on vector/dispersion method and
1169 pathogen
- 1170 ▪ Areas to avoid, movement restrictions, evacuation and/or transportation modifications
- 1171 ▪ Availability of medical and non-medical countermeasures – What is available? For whom?
1172 When? Where?
- 1173 ▪ Locations of supportive care and treatment facilities – What is available? For whom? When?
1174 Where?
- 1175 ▪ Self-decontamination and shelter-in-place messaging to save lives in affected populations
1176 after an intentional biological incident
- 1177 ▪ Availability of tests – What tests are available? For whom? When? Where?

1178 **2.1.1 COORDINATION WITH PARTNERS**

1179 For any disaster, incidents are largely managed or executed at the closest possible geographical,
1180 organizational, and jurisdictional levels. For biological incidents, challenges may quickly be elevated
1181 to regional, national, and international levels, depending upon how the incident spreads or occurs
1182 and the corresponding need for increased communication across various stakeholders. Biological
1183 incident communication stakeholders include public health agencies, healthcare and EMS, animal
1184 health officials, emergency management agencies, law enforcement, civic leaders, environmental
1185 safety personnel, laboratories, private sector, and, in some cases, federal partners in public health
1186 and emergency management (i.e., HHS ASPR and CDC, FEMA, etc.). Together, these various
1187 stakeholders will work to identify response and recovery requirements and develop, coordinate, and
1188 communicate biological incident-specific messages for the affected population.



1189
1190 **Figure 14: Coordination among a wide range of partners is critical to understanding risks**
1191 **and to identifying appropriate response actions**

1192 Ahead of incidents, forming relationships with local biological SMEs who can be called upon to
1193 quickly assist in a biological incident response will benefit risk mitigation efforts. The pre-incident
1194 development of robust and integrated communications processes and systems will facilitate the
1195 cooperation and coordination of response and recovery efforts between and among FSLTT
1196 departments and agencies, as well as private and NGOs. Having such processes and systems in
1197 place before an incident occurs will help jurisdictions achieve desired response and recovery
1198 outcomes when a biological incident does occur.

1199 Inclusion of SMEs within communication plans is critical to the achievement of response and
1200 recovery outcomes.

1201 **2.1.2 COORDINATE WITH PRIVATE SECTOR AND COMMUNITY PARTNERS**

1202 Coordinated communication and collaboration with the private sector and other community partners
1203 supports effective incident response by integrating private sector capabilities and information into
1204 response and recovery plans. The private sector, including major employers, trade and industry
1205 associations representing the impacted economy and critical supply chains, public-private
1206 partnerships, academia, faith-based organizations, and other stakeholders, can help meet

1207 communication needs through established channels. Private sector and community partners often
1208 serve as a trusted source of information and can help ensure public health guidance is properly
1209 communicated to the communities they serve, their employees, at-risk individuals, etc. Community
1210 organizations play an important role in assisting with rapid dissemination of information and in
1211 identifying and communicating unmet needs and potential support resources back to public health
1212 and emergency management authorities.

1213 **Leverage Partner Resources to Provide Informed Public Guidance**

1214 When uncertainties abound during a biological incident, and prompt action must be taken to
1215 save lives and mitigate adverse impacts, all available sources of information and expertise
1216 should be leveraged to support effective and timely decision-making. Many resources (e.g.,
1217 academia, private companies, governmental, etc.) are available to help assess the situation,
1218 make predictions on agent behavior and disease transmission, and estimate potential
1219 consequences. A host of planning, decision support/response, and modeling/simulation tools
1220 are described in the [Planning, Decision-Support, and Modeling Resources](#) section of this
1221 document. For example, atmospheric dispersion modeling can be used to determine what areas,
1222 if any, should be subject to appropriate protective action guidance (e.g., evacuate or shelter-in-
1223 place) following the release of an airborne pathogen.



1224 **Refer To**

- 1225 ▪ HHS CDC [Crisis and Emergency Risk Communication \(CERC\) Manual](#) (2014) for a
1226 comprehensive introduction to the principles and practical tools of crisis and emergency
1227 risk communication. Templates and tools are also available to help craft messages and
1228 may be found on the [CERC Templates and Tools](#) webpage
- 1229 ▪ DHS [Biological Incident Annex to the Response and Recovery Federal Interagency](#)
1230 [Operational Plans](#) (2017) for additional information on incident coordination and
1231 interagency communication



1232 **Coordination Opportunity**

- 1233 ▪ Facilitate coordination/integration between and among governmental agencies, key
1234 businesses, healthcare networks, animal health facilities, critical supply chain partners,
1235 key first responder agencies, and receiving partner organizations.
- 1236 ▪ Plan for coordinated incident communications with a wide stakeholder representation. This
1237 stakeholder group will (a) coordinate interagency messages, (b) develop and execute
1238 public information plans and strategies, (c) advise response officials of emerging public
1239 affairs issues that could affect the response effort, and (d) monitor and control inaccurate
1240 information that could deteriorate public confidence in the incident response effort.

- 1241
1242
1243
1244
1245
- Via community meetings, discuss biological incident-specific concerns and questions with people across population segments (audiences). Such meetings are good avenues to gain community input into educational campaign development and will further build relationships and trust. They can also help ensure preparedness messaging strategies meet the community's needs.



Action Item

- 1246
- 1247
1248
1249
- 1250
- 1251
1252
1253
- 1254
1255
- 1256
1257
- 1258
1259
1260
- 1261
1262
- 1263
1264
- 1265
- Develop procedures for determining who your area's SLTT-level spokesperson should be for various types of biological incidents (e.g., leadership from public health, emergency management, hospitals, healthcare networks, etc.).
 - Develop biological incident-specific partner messaging and communication strategies.
 - Develop protocols and procedures for ensuring timely communication and situational awareness to responding, receiving, and supporting agencies that are specific to biological incident response (e.g., hospitals, HCC, etc.).
 - Discuss the need for cross-jurisdictional communications support and communications interoperability during response to a biological incident.
 - Review existing plans for communications specific to a biological incident with neighboring jurisdictions and state and federal agencies, as appropriate.
 - Exercise communications plans with nearby jurisdictions to establish them as trusted agents in an emergency and ensure they know how best to reach people in your community.
 - Work with schools and daycare centers to understand the best way to include biological incident preparedness in messaging campaigns.
 - Work with epidemiological/public health experts to understand how best to communicate the data informing decision-making.
 - Practice explaining varying biological risk levels during exercises and in trainings.

What will you need to know?

- 1266
- 1267
1268
- 1269
1270
1271
- 1272
1273
1274
- Which stakeholders in your region should be engaged for biological incident communication planning?
 - What are the coordinated communications protocols for a biological incident with SLTT authorities, private or NGOs, healthcare organizations, public health departments, animal health officials, or other stakeholders?
 - What communications memoranda of understanding (MOUs)/memoranda of agreement (MOAs) are already in place? Are biological-specific MOUs/MOAs included within these plans?

1275 2.2 Communications for an Informed Public

1276 During a biological incident, the achievement of response and recovery outcomes is directly linked to
1277 compliance with public health guidance on personal protective measures and public perception of
1278 access to health and medical interventions. Therefore, public communications must synthesize
1279 complex medical and health information to promote public understanding of and compliance with
1280 such guidance. In addition to all-hazards communication principles, biological incident
1281 communications should:

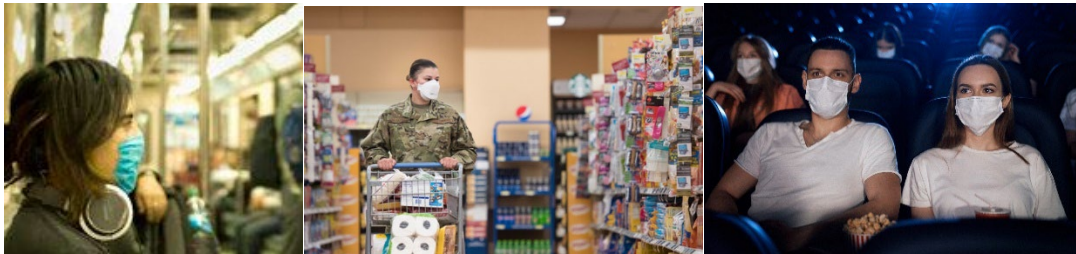
- 1282 ▪ Provide actionable guidance to the public, healthcare workers, and first responders/receivers on
1283 safe work practices, PPE, and steps the public should take to protect itself

- 1284 ▪ Anticipate and address the questions, concerns, and differing perspectives of the public,
1285 business owners, elected officials, and health officials when communicating public health risks
1286 and risk prevention measures

- 1287 ▪ Maintain empathetic and validating two-way communication between decision makers and the
1288 public

- 1289 ▪ Maintain public awareness of ongoing cleanup activities and ongoing human, animal, and
1290 environmental health risks

- 1291 ▪ Coordinate associated messaging for all the above with stakeholder organizations involved



1292

1293

Figure 15: Public complying with risk and protective measures⁴¹

1294 The public will demand authoritative and knowledgeable information, even in a situation that is still
1295 developing. Effective response and recovery communication will be fostered by comprehensive and
1296 flexible communication plans, strategies, and content developed prior to an incident. Coordinated,
1297 accessible messaging and information that adheres to principles of risk communication, even in
1298 areas unaffected by the incident, is crucial for combating the public fear and anxiety that often
1299 characterizes biological incidents. Keep in mind that public communications during biological
1300 incident response may include both public and animal health guidance and will likely be more

⁴¹ (Middle) Moede, B. (2020). *Woman in military shops for groceries while wearing a face mask* [Photograph]. DVIDS Hub. https://d1dvf68ux039x.cloudfront.net/thumbs/photos/2004/6189389/600x375_q95.jpg

1301 complex than most emergency messages. Maintaining public trust and compliance with warnings
1302 and guidance will continue to be a key objective of communications activities during incident
1303 response and recovery due to the unique characteristics of biological incidents and the time it takes
1304 to identify the causative biological agent in many instances.

1305 **2.2.1 PUBLIC INFORMATION FOCUS**

1306 Communicating the right message at the right time ensures the public has the necessary information
1307 to protect themselves. Message composition should consider the following:

- 1308 ▪ **Specific** – Provide the public with clear information to understand the risk (e.g., confirmed vs.
1309 suspected identity of the biological agent) and how to follow specific public health guidance.
- 1310 ▪ **Consistent** – Messages should not contain contradictory information, and messaging should be
1311 consistent from all communication channels to the public. Message coordination between public
1312 health and emergency management officials as well as other stakeholder organizations should
1313 occur prior to information dissemination.
- 1314 ▪ **Certain** – State what is known and unknown in certain terms (i.e., the biological agent, location of
1315 origin of dispersal, etc.). Do not guess or speculate.
- 1316 ▪ **Clear** – Use common words that can easily be understood and avoid technical terms.
- 1317 ▪ **Accurate** – Do not overstate or understate the facts or omit important information. For example,
1318 be accurate when sharing case rates, and explain how that information was collected.
- 1319 ▪ **Accessible** – Craft messages with consideration for people with disabilities (e.g., vision- or
1320 hearing-impaired populations) and for non-English speaking individuals.

1321 Message context should also be clear to the audience and accompany the guidance. Understanding
1322 the hazard, location, timeframe, source of warning, etc. allows for better understanding of the
1323 messaging and subsequently helps to mitigate the impacts of the biological incident. Messages
1324 should include the following context:

- 1325 ▪ **Specific hazard** – What is the biological hazard? What are the potential risks for the community?
- 1326 ▪ **Location** – Where will the effects occur? Does the incident involve a discrete or wide-area
1327 dispersal? Is the location described so those without local knowledge can understand their risk?
- 1328 ▪ **Timeframe** – When will it arrive at various locations? How long will the effects last? Is there time
1329 to implement protective actions (e.g., masks, movement restrictions, etc.)?
- 1330 ▪ **Source of warning** – Who is issuing the warning? Is it an official source with public credibility? Is
1331 a SME, such as virologist or scientist, able to facilitate public communication?

- 1332
1333
- **Magnitude** – A description of the expected effects. How bad is it likely to get? How far and how quickly could the biological agent potentially spread?
- 1334
1335
- **Likelihood** – The probability of occurrence of the effect. For intentional attacks, what is the likelihood of a secondary attack?
- 1336
1337
1338
1339
- **Protective behavior** – What protection actions should people take and when? Where/who should (or should not) take the actions (described in clear geospatial, age group, and other everyday terms)? How will the protective actions reduce the biological agent’s impact? If evacuation is called for, where should people go and what should they take with them?

1340
1341
1342

Keep messaging language simple and easy to understand to help ensure people take the right protective actions at the right times. For example, what type of mask to wear and when to wear it. People will want to know why an action is protective before they will take that action.



Coordination Opportunity

1343

1344
1345
1346
1347
1348
1349

Enhance the crisis and emergency risk communication framework by conducting cross-disciplinary training on issuing biological incident-specific protective action guidance, including the development of pre-scripted messaging targeted towards all community stakeholders, including the private sector. Ensure all stakeholders, including governmental agencies, key businesses, and healthcare facilities, understand the importance of providing consistent, coordinated, accurate, accessible, timely, and understandable information to the public.



Refer To

1350

- 1351
1352
1353
1354
- HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health* (2018), specifically Capability 4 – Emergency Public Information and Warning and Capability 6 – Information Sharing
- 1355
1356
- FEMA Center for Domestic Preparedness (CDP) *Managing Public Information for All Hazards Incidents* course
- 1357
1358
1359
- HHS *Public Health Emergency Response: A Guide for Leaders and Responders* (2007) is specifically tailored for public officials (e.g., mayors, governors, county executives, emergency managers) and first responders (e.g., police, fire, EMS)
- 1360
1361
- WHO *Effective Media Communication during Public Health Emergencies* (2005) for more information on communicating effectively during public health emergencies

1362



Action Item

1363
1364

- Develop biological incident-specific, accessible public messaging and communication strategies prior to an incident that extend your existing communications plans.

1365
1366

- Familiarize communications staff with existing pre-scripted biological incident messaging resources.

1367
1368

- Determine possible points of confusion in public health and safety guidance for your community, and draft messages to deconflict.

1369
1370
1371
1372

- Determine a review process for emergency messages that incorporates authorities as well as biological incident-specific stakeholders and SMEs. Utilize exercises or real-world scenarios to practice and refine the review chain. Socialize draft messages with decision makers to gain pre-approval for dissemination.

1373
1374
1375

- Establish a process in collaboration with public health authorities to catalog, categorize, and answer public questions during an emergency. Test the process of using pre-approved and stored messages with stakeholders.

1376
1377
1378
1379
1380
1381

- Hold a tabletop exercise in your jurisdiction that uses locally tailored biological incident emergency planning and communications guidance. Include members of the response community from all levels – decision makers, first responders, public works staff, and communicators – and use this opportunity to see what other questions come up. Some questions may be answered by your plan and your pre-scripted messages; others may inform how your jurisdiction shapes and updates its communications plan.

1382 **2.2.2 PUBLIC INFORMATION DELIVERY**

1383
1384
1385
1386
1387

Before an incident, jurisdictions and agencies should identify communication systems for public messaging for use in providing clear, factual, and timely public health and safety guidance. In general, dissemination channels should be agile and immediate and able to handle frequent updates as information changes and becomes available. Information can be disseminated through several means including social media, traditional media, and press conferences.



1388

1389

Figure 16: Public messaging through social media⁴²

1390

Plans should include a standard operating procedure that can be easily integrated into existing communication plans for the specific methods and partnership networks that will be used to communicate information and protective action directives within the jurisdiction during a biological incident. The methods chosen should be informed by typical community usage of platforms and outlets and communicated to the public during preparedness campaigns so that they know where to find and receive emergency information. Such an approach will help reduce instances of community members seeking confirmation through observation or querying others prior to taking a protective action. Additional considerations should be made for how to reach different at-risk populations, as biological incidents pose an increased threat to specific populations (e.g., those who are immunocompromised).

1400

For immediate emergency notification, SLTT communications staff can take advantage of public alerting systems that they may use for other incidents (e.g., FEMA's Integrated Public Alert and Warning System [IPAWS], the Emergency Alert System, etc.). For intentional or accidental release incidents, it may be difficult to ensure those in the affected area receive the proper messaging for protective actions (e.g., decontamination, closing of windows, etc.). In this case, use of geo-targeted messaging or IPAWS, which has the capability to broadcast an alert message to all cellular phones in a given area as a Wireless Emergency Alert (WEA), can provide evacuation, stay-at-home, or other protection guidance to those in an affected area. The limitations of these systems, including the frequency of messaging and the languages available, should be explored, and mitigation strategies considered in advance.

1410

Additionally, planners should consider how to ensure information delivery during concurrent disasters. For example, cellular connectivity may be lost for days after a natural disaster such as a

1411

⁴² (Top) DC Homeland Security & Emergency Management. (2009). [Online image]. https://twitter.com/DC_HSEMA/status/1629661813; (bottom) Chicago OEMC. (2020). [Online image]. <https://twitter.com/ChicagoOEMC/status/1241371167388094466>

1412 hurricane or an earthquake in the same area that is being impacted by a concurrent biological
1413 incident.



Coordination Opportunity

1414

1415 Practicing the deployment of geo-targeted, biological incident-specific messages is necessary
1416 to ensure this strategy can be used effectively during an emergency. Including community
1417 groups, school officials, local businesses, and other stakeholders in this test will allow
1418 communications staff to receive valuable and trusted feedback before an incident occurs and
1419 help tailor the alerting strategy to fit the community's needs.



Refer To

1420

- 1421 ▪ FEMA Integrated Public Alert and Warning System (IPAWS) webpage for more information
1422 on how to access IPAWS; to learn about the criteria for issuing warnings, different message
1423 categories, and incident- and hazard-specific names/codes; and to obtain authorization to
1424 send alerts.
- 1425 ▪ Federal Communications Commission Wireless Emergency Alerts (WEA) webpage for more
1426 information on integration and use of this system.



Action Item

1427

- 1428 ▪ Be familiar with communications capabilities that may be deployed for specific biological
1429 incidents, such as IPAWS and WEA.
- 1430 ▪ Ensure that your jurisdiction has designated individuals authorized to send WEA messages
1431 and exercise deploying targeted WEA messages.
- 1432 ▪ Talk with local organizations and businesses to encourage participation in immediate
1433 notification exercises, especially those that may serve historically marginalized
1434 communities or communities with fewer healthcare services available.
- 1435 ▪ Determine which public-preferred news sources are among top choices for use in your
1436 jurisdiction. Collaborate with public health authorities to establish who will be
1437 communicating with these sources to ensure news outlets will know who they will be
1438 receiving information from during a biological incident.

What will you need to know?

1439

- 1440 Who will gather and synthesize medical and health information for public guidance and
1441 compliance from SLTT, federal, non-governmental, and private sector partners?

- 1442 ▪ When is that likely to happen based on the established response timeline?
- 1443 ▪ How will various stakeholders be engaged based on specific biological agent types?
- 1444 ▪ Which stakeholders can be engaged if the incident is thought to be intentional?
- 1445 □ How will information on availability of MCMs be provided to the public? On locations of
- 1446 supportive care and treatment facilities? On instructions on risk and protection measures?
- 1447 On testing site and availability?
- 1448 □ How will you contact hard-to-reach populations that are considered “high risk” for contracting
- 1449 a biological agent, if the agent is communicable (transient, homeless, homebound, etc.)?

1450 **2.3 Strategies for Effective Communications**

1451 To have the best chance for success, public communications campaigns for biological incidents
1452 must do more than just deliver protective action and other response information to the public.
1453 Effective communications throughout all stages of response and recovery will be fostered by the
1454 development of comprehensive and flexible communications plans, strategies, and content in
1455 collaboration with public health authorities before an incident occurs and by cultivating and
1456 maintaining relationships with the public. Considerations, strategies, and activities that can promote
1457 effective communications activities include understanding your audience, conducting pre-incident
1458 preparedness campaigns, securing technical assistance, communicating throughout response and
1459 recovery, communicating with empathy, and communicating for large-scale, intentional, and/or
1460 unattributed incidents.

1461 **2.3.1 UNDERSTAND YOUR AUDIENCE**

1462 Understanding the cultural background, history, location, primary language, values, accessibility
1463 needs, etc. of your community’s various “audiences” is key to designing an effective communications
1464 strategy for any crisis or emergency situation.⁴³ Tools such as community-wide surveys can be used
1465 to gain insight into the needs and concerns of specific populations and identify populations that may
1466 benefit from different or more specific instructions for biological incidents (e.g.,
1467 immunocompromised, homeless, historically marginalized, etc.). Information collected from such a
1468 survey will help public communications staff develop successful whole-community messaging
1469 campaigns. Community surveys are also a good place to start building public trust in biological
1470 incident planning efforts.

⁴³ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2014). *Crisis and Emergency Risk Communication, 2014 Edition*. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). https://emergency.cdc.gov/cerc/resources/pdf/cerc_2014edition.pdf

1471 **2.3.2 CONDUCT PRE-INCIDENT PREPAREDNESS CAMPAIGNS**

1472 The public's familiarity and perception of control during a biological incident can be enhanced
1473 through pre-incident education. Pre-incident education also increases the likelihood that the public
1474 will heed messaging during an incident such as directives to shelter-in-place or maintain social
1475 distancing, protecting themselves from potential exposures. Preparedness messaging strategies that
1476 are action focused help the public feel more in control of an emergency and help them retain
1477 information and make better informed decisions about how to keep themselves and their loved ones
1478 safe during a biological incident.

1479 **2.3.3 SECURE TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE**

1480 Integrating a public health/epidemiological advisor/SME into the communications team will enable
1481 the team to draft plain language messages that clearly and simply explain pathogen-specific risks,
1482 clarify the importance of recommended protective actions, and address responder and public
1483 concerns about exposures. In addition, some messages are best delivered by scientific experts, and
1484 for some platforms and media types, such as live interviews, a technical expert should be in front of
1485 a camera. Also, when rumors and mis- and disinformation about the incident appear across social
1486 media platforms, advisors can quickly assess questionable messages and assist in drafting
1487 messages to counter misinformation and promote official guidance. Public
1488 health/epidemiological/veterinary experts may be available from community, state, or national
1489 organizations, such as state health or agriculture agencies, to serve as SMEs.

1490 **2.3.4 COMMUNICATE THROUGHOUT RESPONSE AND RECOVERY**

1491 Establish early in the response that the incident will likely continue to evolve over time, and
1492 messages will be updated to reflect current conditions and new information as it is gathered, such as
1493 pathogen identification or changing of protection guidance. Messages that include simple
1494 explanations of what work is ongoing and how it affects current and future public/animal health and
1495 environmental safety or other guidance helps the public understand that work is being done hours,
1496 days, or even months after the incident. Frequent updates from an official account on social media
1497 encourage compliance with public health guidance even when no new information is available.
1498 Additionally, this helps to ensure people will continue to look to official sources for information.
1499 Social media platforms should be monitored and analyzed to identify common questions, rumors,
1500 concerns, and immediate needs. This information can help inform the structure and content of
1501 ongoing response and recovery messaging.

1502 **2.3.5 COMMUNICATE WITH EMPATHY**

1503 Create validating and empathetic messaging to help sustain the community and maintain its support
1504 during difficult times. The public most likely will experience strong emotions due to displacement,
1505 perceived speed of response and recovery activities, economic challenges (including potential loss of
1506 income), or illness and loss of loved ones. Validating the public's fear, grief, and sadness before
1507 giving information or instruction reassures the public that their concerns are being heard and taken
1508 seriously and increases their trust in the response and recovery process.

1509 **2.3.6 COMMUNICATIONS FOR LARGE-SCALE, INTENTIONAL, AND/OR UNATTRIBUTED**
1510 **INCIDENTS**

1511 Whether small or large in scope, a biological attack on American soil will almost certainly be a
1512 leading topic of worldwide reporting and interest. Even an unintentional biological incident that is
1513 large in scale (such as a pandemic) will attract 24-hour, multi-platform, multi-outlet interest and
1514 regional, national, and international coverage. More locally, a mass casualty biological incident will
1515 likely incite feelings of fear, anger, and grief within the public. In any case, wide reporting by media
1516 outlets can be expected with a biological incident. Local public information officers and
1517 communications teams likely will be immediately overwhelmed by inquiries and will need the support
1518 of public affairs staff from neighboring jurisdictions and state and federal agency and private sector
1519 partner communications offices. Official communications must always show that everyone’s priority
1520 is to protect the public and the environment and focus on the actions being taken to do so.
1521 Messages must remain clear, concise, and consistent, providing vital information on protective
1522 actions without instilling additional fear or causing panic. In the instance of a terrorist incident, the
1523 DOJ FBI must be consulted before issuing sensitive media/press releases.

1524 When developing behavioral guidance messaging, communications staff must consider how their
1525 messages and the communications techniques and/or social media campaigns being used are
1526 perceived by the public at large. Communications should address the questions and concerns of
1527 the whole community, including the public, business owners, elected officials, and health
1528 officials, and should be easily understandable. When developing messages and communicating
1529 public health risks and protective measures, ask the following questions:

- 1530 ▪ Is the guidance evidence- and risk-based? Will implementing the guidance achieve benefits
1531 that outweigh the risks (e.g., loss of jobs, adverse impacts to critical infrastructure)?
- 1532 ▪ Do the risks and prevention measures complement each other, or do they conflict (e.g., will
1533 fully vaccinated persons still be required to wear masks)?
- 1534 ▪ What questions should we anticipate from people after we communicate the risks and
1535 protective measures (e.g., do I still need to wear masks outdoors when taking a walk)?
- 1536 ▪ Is the guidance overly technical? Are there numerous “if and then” conditions or caveats that
1537 may confuse readers?



1538 **Figure 17: Holding town hall–style community meetings and preparing official spokespersons**
1539 **to speak with news media are important communications strategies**
1540

1541 Preparedness messaging strategies that focus on action help the public feel more confident in
1542 the response, assist them in understanding what’s important and what’s not, and allow them to
1543 make better-informed decisions during an actual incident.

1544 Talking about the people who have succumbed to the disease or agent will be one of the most
1545 harrowing aspects of a communicator’s job; messages written with compassion, vulnerability,
1546 and strength will help the community begin the recovery process and provide some closure and
1547 comfort to those who have lost a great deal.



Coordination Opportunity

1548

1549 Encourage local organizations to share existing emergency plans and work together to develop
1550 biological incident-specific emergency plans. Encourage the creation of plans for locations
1551 where people tend to gather in the community.

1552 Work with local media outlets before an incident occurs to ensure the media understand the
1553 key roles they play in reinforcing the protective action messages that are important for saving
1554 lives during a biological incident.



Refer To

1555

1556 New York City [Community Emergency Planning Toolkit](#) is a good model to consult when
1557 beginning to design and scope your survey needs.

1558 FEMA [Emergency Management Institute \(EMI\) Public Information Officer \(PIO\) training](#)
1559 [program](#), which includes some of the following courses:

- 1560 ▪ IS0029 Public Information Officer Awareness, for a general understanding of the
1561 emergency public information function
- 1562 ▪ E0105 Public Information Basics, for new FSLTT emergency managers
- 1563 ▪ E0388 Advanced Public Information Officer, for full-time public information personnel with
1564 extensive experience in public information activities
- 1565 ▪ E0389 Master Public Information Officer, for experienced PIOs who serve in a leadership
1566 role during large events requiring communication and collaboration at the state, regional,
1567 and federal levels

1568 FEMA CDP training on public information and communications, which include the following
1569 courses:

- 1570 ▪ Managing Public Information for All Hazards Incidents (MPI MGT-902)
- 1571 ▪ Emergency Communication Methods

1572 UPMC Center for Health Security *How to Steward Medical Countermeasures and Public Trust*
1573 *in an Emergency* (2016) for more information on best practices for communicating risk in an
1574 emergency



Action Item

- 1575
- 1576 ■ Discuss the need for pre-incident preparedness as a lifesaving technique for a biological
1577 incident with elected officials and community leaders and members.
 - 1578 ■ Identify successful outreach campaigns within your community and model biological
1579 preparedness outreach campaigns on these.
 - 1580 ■ Explore and exercise the use of digital media monitoring.
 - 1581 ■ During exercises and throughout the planning process, talk with communications staff
1582 about the mental strain that will occur during an actual incident and the available
1583 resources that provide support.
 - 1584 ■ Plan for gaps in coverage in staffing during the recovery phase as responders tend to their
1585 loved ones and homes in addition to the more specific concerns that may arise if a
1586 biological agent is communicable (i.e., quarantine, masking, etc.).
 - 1587 ■ Establish plans to provide surge support to communications staff within your response
1588 structure.
 - 1589 – Consider messaging needs and strategy for incorporation of fatality management as a
1590 topic of need. Enlist the support of professionals who regularly communicate about death.
1591 Research cultural differences in dealing with death and burial. Discuss the emotional
1592 strain of messages related to fatality management with staff who will have to draft them.
 - 1593 ■ Work with Regional FEMA counterparts to learn how to take advantage of the Crisis
1594 Counseling Assistance and Training Program.

What will you need to know?

- 1595
- 1596 What are the demographics of your community? How are communication adaptations for
1597 variations in population density, non-traditional groups, or other vulnerable community areas
1598 or members accounted for in your biological incident response and recovery plans?
 - 1599 What languages are spoken, preferred, and understood in the community?
 - 1600 Which local venues have existing emergency plans (for any incident)? Do they have
1601 communications plans for large-scale catastrophic incidents?

1602 **2.4 Federal Assistance for Communication with External Partners and the**
1603 **Public**

1604 The need for support from regional and SLTT partner agencies is likely during a large-scale biological
1605 incident. In some instances, a federal Unified Command (UC) may be established to maintain
1606 situational awareness; keep track of the ever-changing status of human, critical services, resources,
1607 supply chain, and infrastructure impacts; and communicate with SLTT partners throughout response
1608 and recovery.

1609 In terms of partners involved, biological incidents that have large human health impacts will entail, at
1610 a minimum, communications between HHS ASPR, FEMA, and HHS CDC. A variety of other agencies
1611 will be brought in as the incident requires and expands to UC. Other agencies will be engaged
1612 depending on response needs; the DOS will engage with international stakeholders and in the early
1613 stages of an overseas incident caused by a novel emerging disease reported under International
1614 Health Regulations (IHR), while terrorist incidents will involve the DOJ FBI and the Attorney General
1615 will lead law enforcement investigation activities when the incident is, or is suspected to be,
1616 intentional. FEMA will help coordinate information and resource requests among federal partners, as
1617 necessary.

1618 **2.4.1 FEDERAL RESPONSE PARTNERS THAT COMMUNICATE WITH THE PUBLIC**

1619 When an incident is complex enough to require a coordinated, interagency communications effort,
1620 ESF #15, the External Affairs (EA) Annex of NRF, will be activated to provide additional coordination
1621 mechanisms and resources for the whole responding community, including individuals, community
1622 organizations, NGOs, the private sector, and FSLTT governments. When ESF #15 is activated at the
1623 federal level, EA efforts are coordinated by the Lead Federal Agency (LFA) and a Joint Information
1624 Center (JIC) may be activated to serve as the federal incident communications coordination center.

1625 **2.4.2 EMERGENCY SUPPORT FUNCTION #15 – EXTERNAL AFFAIRS ANNEX**

1626 ESF #15 integrates the Public Affairs, Congressional Affairs, and Intergovernmental Affairs
1627 components of federal departments and agencies with the private sector as EA. ESF #15
1628 coordinates the development and release of accurate, timely, and accessible information and
1629 instructions to affected audiences, including the government, media, NGOs, the private sector, and
1630 the local populace (including children, those with disabilities, vulnerable populations, and individuals
1631 with limited English proficiency). Under ESF #15, SLTT authorities retain primary responsibility for
1632 communicating health and safety instructions for their population, although the federal government
1633 may assist (for example, HHS and CDC have communication centers that can coordinate the
1634 community-wide release of public health and medical information). Specific supplemental guidance
1635 for HHS, its agencies, and partners to educate and inform the public, healthcare professionals, policy
1636 makers, partner organizations, and the media is located in the Public Health and Medical Annex (ESF
1637 #8). This also includes content related to:

- 1638
 - Federal assistance to the incident-affected area

- 1639 ▪ Federal departmental/agency response
- 1640 ▪ National preparedness activities
- 1641 ▪ Protective measures (both MCMs and NPIs)
- 1642 ▪ Impacts on affected and non-affected areas – health and medical impacts, both real and
- 1643 perceived



1644

Figure 18: Upon ESF #15 activation at the federal level, EA efforts are coordinated by the DHS Assistant Secretary for Public Affairs or the FEMA Director of EA

1645
1646

1647 Activation of National Incident Communications Conference Line (NICCL) may occur along with ESF
1648 #15 activation; these calls involve regular updates from key external affairs leadership across the
1649 federal government.

1650 **External Affairs Coordination – Activation of a Joint Information Center**

1651 The LFA will use its existing and pre-approved EA structure that coordinates with the White House,
1652 federal and SLTT agencies, the private sector, and other entities to provide credible messaging and
1653 accurate information to affected populations using all available technologies and tools through their
1654 Public Information Officer (PIO) and EA offices. The LFA senior response official (SRO)/On-Scene
1655 Coordinator (OSC) and designated PIO may elect to establish a JIC (or National JIC, depending on the
1656 incident) for biological incidents, including food and agriculture incidents. The JIC performs the
1657 following:

- 1658 ▪ Ensures all potential stakeholders for incident response and recovery efforts are provided the
1659 necessary information for release
- 1660 ▪ Deconflicts all information prior to release and provides a unified public message regarding the
1661 status of the incident response and recovery as well as any public, animal, plant, or
1662 environmental health impacts that may arise from the incident
- 1663 ▪ If applicable, interacts with an established Incident Command (IC) or UCG to ensure that all
1664 messaging coincides with the ongoing response and recovery operations

- 1665 ▪ Acts to minimize delays to the release of approved messaging
- 1666 ▪ Ensures equal access to the information distributed to the public, including the provision of
- 1667 information in alternate formats for persons with disabilities, children, and the elderly, and, as
- 1668 needed, in languages other than English

1669 **2.4.3 PUBLIC INFORMATION FEDERAL SPOKESPERSON**

1670 Depending on the nature of the biological incident, HHS ASPR may designate one of the HHS
1671 agencies (e.g., HHS CDC and FDA, NIH) to lead public health and medical response public affairs
1672 activities;⁴⁴ alternatively, the appropriate spokesperson may be from DHS, the White House, the
1673 National Security Council (NSC), or elsewhere. In the instance of a terrorist incident, the DOJ FBI
1674 must be consulted before sensitive media/press releases are issued. Federal response-related
1675 announcements to the public typically are coordinated through the JIC. In some cases, the
1676 responding federal SRO/OSC may need to communicate with the media/public on tactical operations
1677 and matters affecting public health and safety directly from the scene, particularly during the early
1678 stages of the emergency response in the context of a localized incident.



1679

1680

Figure 19: A FEMA spokesperson communicating a message

1681



Coordination Opportunity

1682

1683

1684

Coordinate with federal public health, communication, emergency management, and other officials to establish who is responsible for communications, especially as incidents increase in scope/scale, and to ensure that communications are consistent.

⁴⁴ The President of the United States has directed the Secretary of Homeland Security and the Attorney General to coordinate with each other to execute key responsibilities that provide public information and warning to the nation regarding terrorist threats and attacks.

1685



Action Item

1686
1687

- Review federal resources and ensure that your jurisdictional communications meet national standards.

1688



Refer To

1689
1690

- DHS *National Response Framework (NRF)*, Emergency Support Function (ESF) # 15: External Affairs Annex (2016)

1691
1692
1693

- HHS CDC *Crisis and Emergency Risk Communication: Terrorism and Bioterrorism Communication Challenges* (2014) for more specific information on communication during bioterrorism incidents

1694

What do you need to know?

1695
1696

- What federal support is available for communicating with the public? When would this be available to support response or recovery?

1697
1698
1699

- How will your communication plan for biological incidents expand to include federal stakeholders? How will operations return once federal partners are no longer engaged for communication assistance?

1700
1701

- What information will federal partners request to ensure informed decision-making and communication?

1702 KPF 3: Control the Spread of Disease

1703 Disease control efforts limit the spread of disease by avoiding unnecessary exposure and
1704 preventing the onset of disease in those exposed. By controlling the spread of disease, lives are
1705 saved and resources may be used more effectively, thus reducing the overall impact of the
1706 incident. Depending on the nature of the incident (e.g., intentional or accidental release, or
1707 naturally occurring; transmission via contaminated surfaces or air; and communicable versus
1708 non-communicable disease), controlling the spread may involve NPIs, MCMs, and/or
1709 environmental containment/source reduction (e.g., vector control).

1710 3.1 Non-Pharmaceutical Interventions

1711 NPIs are actions that can be taken during a biological incident to slow the spread of disease. NPIs
1712 may be used as a stopgap measure to bridge the time between detection of the incident and the
1713 arrival of pharmaceuticals, or as the predominant intervention when pharmaceuticals to treat the
1714 disease do not currently exist. In addition, NPIs may be used concurrently with vaccination
1715 campaigns (if vaccines are available) to control disease spread while the population develops
1716 immunity.

1717 3.1.1 TYPES OF NON-PHARMACEUTICAL INTERVENTIONS

1718 Public health authorities will determine when and which type of NPI measures should be
1719 implemented. Depending on the nature of the biological incident, controlling the spread of a
1720 pathogen may require personal, community, and/or environmental NPIs.⁴⁵

1721 ■ **Personal NPIs:** Protective actions that can help individuals avoid exposure to pathogens, such as
1722 handwashing, covering of the mouth and nose when coughing and/or sneezing, wearing
1723 facemasks/face coverings, and voluntary home isolation for those with confirmed illness or
1724 quarantine for those who were exposed to see if they become ill.⁴⁶ In general, the use of these
1725 measures community-wide is recommended only during biological incidents with communicable
1726 diseases that are of sufficiently large scale and scope. For vector-borne diseases, avoidance of

⁴⁵ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2018, March 9). Application and Integration of Non-pharmaceutical Interventions (NPIs) into Pre-Pandemic Influenza Planning, Preparedness, and Response (Web-based). Training and Continuing Education Online (TCEO). <https://tceols.cdc.gov/Course/Detail2/7618>

⁴⁶ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2019, August 26). *Personal NPIs: Everyday Preventive Actions*. U.S. Department of Health & Human Services (HHS). <https://www.cdc.gov/nonpharmaceutical-interventions/personal/index.html>.

- 1727 vector habitat areas during peak vector activity times⁴⁷ can reduce exposure to vectors and
1728 lower the risk of disease transmission.
- 1729 ■ **Community NPIs:** Strategies and policies that communities and organizations can implement to
1730 minimize the risk of an outbreak negatively impacting community lifelines. Most commonly,
1731 workplace and public/community environments, procedures, and policies are modified to
1732 prevent spread of disease in settings in which close human contact may be necessary.
1733 Modifications may include temperature and/or sign/symptom checks, limiting in-person
1734 capacities, and facility closures. Protective measures can be supported through:
- 1735 ○ Encouraging staff and public compliance with personal NPIs
- 1736 ○ Eliminating nonessential travel
- 1737 ○ Limiting workplace interactions by implementing telecommuting policies and developing
1738 staggered work schedules when feasible
- 1739 ○ Educating the community about proper PPE use⁴⁸
- 1740 ■ **Environmental NPIs:** Engineering controls can be implemented in indoor or outdoor settings to
1741 protect community members from exposure. In a workplace setting, engineering controls protect
1742 workers from biological hazards by mitigating hazardous conditions and/or by isolating workers
1743 in ways that will not interfere with productivity.^{49,50} Examples of engineering controls include
1744 increasing air exchange and surface sanitization in addition to high-efficiency air filters; physical
1745 barriers such as clear plastic sneeze guards; ultraviolet lighting; drive-through windows for
1746 customer service; and specialized negative pressure ventilation in areas where aerosol
1747 generation is likely (e.g., airborne infection isolation rooms in healthcare settings, specialized
1748 autopsy suites in mortuary settings).⁵¹ Environmental NPIs also include routine surface cleaning

⁴⁷ U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) Veterinary Services (VS). (2014). *FAD PReP NAHEMS Guidelines: Wildlife Management and Vector Control for a Foreign Animal Disease Response in Domestic Livestock*. https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/emergency_management/downloads/FAD-PReP_NAHEMS_Guidelines.pdf

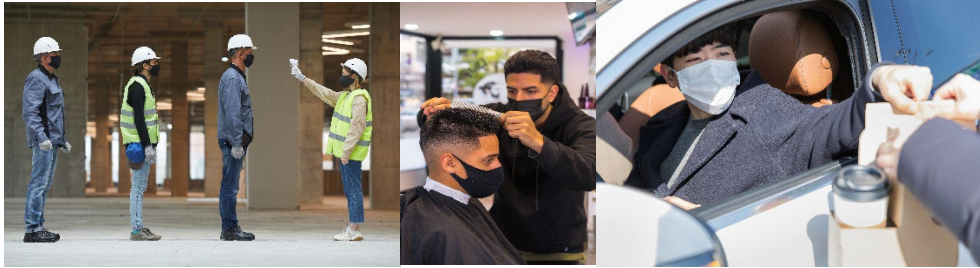
⁴⁸ Department of Labor (DOL) Occupational Safety and Health (OSHA). (2020). *Guidance on Preparing Workplaces for COVID-19*. <https://www.osha.gov/sites/default/files/publications/OSHA3990.pdf>

⁴⁹ National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH). (2015, January 14). *Engineering Controls*. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). <https://www.cdc.gov/niosh/engcontrols/>

⁵⁰ Department of Labor (DOL) Occupational Safety and Health (OSHA). (2020). *Guidance on Preparing Workplaces for COVID-19*. <https://www.osha.gov/sites/default/files/publications/OSHA3990.pdf>

⁵¹ Department of Labor (DOL) Occupational Safety and Health (OSHA). (2020). *Guidance on Preparing Workplaces for COVID-19*. <https://www.osha.gov/sites/default/files/publications/OSHA3990.pdf>

1749 of frequently touched surfaces and objects, especially in childcare facilities, schools, workplaces,
1750 etc.



1751

1752

Figure 20: Examples of personal, community and environmental NPI measures

1753 In most cases, the authority to mandate isolation and quarantine resides with state and local
1754 government public health authorities, although the federal government has the authority to
1755 institute isolation or quarantine to prevent the introduction of a communicable disease to the
1756 U.S. from a foreign country or the spread of disease between states. Additionally, tribal nations
1757 have the authority to enforce their own isolation and quarantine laws. Public health, legal,
1758 emergency management, and law enforcement officials should coordinate on implementation
1759 and enforcement.

1760



Coordination Opportunity

1761 Coordinate with public health authorities to develop an understanding of how NPI measures
1762 may affect the overall response and plan for supporting the implementation of NPI measures
1763 throughout the community. Emergency management agencies may serve as a convener of
1764 local government agencies and stakeholders to create buy-in (e.g., educational campaigns,
1765 pre-planning meetings) regarding the importance and effectiveness of NPI measures in
1766 preventing disease spread.

1767



Action Item

- 1768 ▪ Anticipate types of public health mitigation measures and potential impacts to critical
1769 infrastructure and continuity of government and critical government services at the SLTT
1770 level; develop and implement NPIs that provide protection for government staff and the
1771 public in in-person settings while maintaining critical mission continuity.
- 1772 ▪ Develop partnerships with local service organizations to support individuals who may face
1773 challenges implementing NPIs, including vulnerable populations such as the homeless with
1774 limited access to personal hygiene facilities and residents of congregate housing and multi-
1775 generational homes that cannot easily self-isolate or quarantine.

- 1776 ▪ SLTT authorities should consider providing incentives and/or grants to support the
1777 implementation of NPIs by smaller entities to prevent disease spread. Smaller businesses
1778 may not have the resources to enact large-scale facility changes or the space to create
1779 separation between workers.
- 1780 ▪ Work with local employers and state and local health officials to develop strategies that
1781 employers can use to support worksite flexibility (e.g., telecommuting) and flexible work
1782 hours (e.g., staggered shifts) to prevent the spread of disease.
- 1783 ▪ Ensure first responders, first receivers, and other mission-essential government employees
1784 receive training for NPI-related procedures.



Refer To

- 1785
- 1786 ▪ HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National*
1787 *Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health* (2018), specifically
1788 Capability 11 – Nonpharmaceutical Interventions
- 1789 ▪ HHS CDC NPIs *Planning Guidance and Checklists* webpage
- 1790 ▪ HHS CDC online course *Application and Integration of Non-pharmaceutical Interventions*
1791 *(NPIs) into Pre-Pandemic Influenza Planning, Preparedness, and Response*

What will you need to know?

- 1792
- 1793 Which government agency in your jurisdiction has the authority to develop, issue, and
1794 enforce NPIs? For example, who has the authority to enforce quarantine compliance? Laws
1795 may vary by state.
- 1796 How can emergency management work with public health to plan for implementing NPIs
1797 throughout the community? How can emergency management support public health in NPI-
1798 related communication, public education, and/or situational awareness?
- 1799 ▪ How can emergency management assist public health in identifying historically marginalized
1800 or underserved communities that may benefit from targeted education or support for
1801 implementation of NPIs?
- 1802 How will you support major public and private sector infrastructures in your region plan for
1803 possible impacts of NPI implementation?
- 1804 How will you encourage the owners/operators of amusement and theme parks, sports
1805 complexes, convention centers, train and bus stations, airports, and other public spaces to
1806 plan for NPIs?
- 1807 What planning resources will help them? Which SMEs will they need to know and
1808 communicate with?

1809 **3.1.2 REPERCUSSIONS AND CHALLENGES OF NON-PHARMACEUTICAL INTERVENTIONS**

1810 While they are intended to support lifesaving measures in the context of biological incidents, the
1811 implementation of NPIs also can have serious repercussions on the community for both the short
1812 and long term. For example, school closures can have educational, developmental,
1813 behavioral/social, and other health and well-being impacts on children. Isolation, quarantine, and
1814 social distancing requirements can have adverse impacts on the mental health of the affected
1815 population, who may experience stress and anxiety (see KPF 4, Augment Provision of Mass Care and
1816 Human Services to the Affected Population, for further discussion of mental health needs). The
1817 transition of schools and businesses to a virtual environment may limit their operations, and the
1818 need for reliable broadband internet may preclude rural or poor communities from participating.
1819 Limited customer capacities or facility closures will cause financial hardships for businesses and
1820 have cascading impacts to employee and customer livelihoods. Travel restrictions (domestic and
1821 international), embargos, business restrictions and closures, and cancelation of mass
1822 gatherings/events can create further economic hardships for communities and local business
1823 owners.

1824 With community buy-in, many personal and community NPIs are relatively easy to implement;
1825 however, for the reasons stated above and others, local authorities may experience strong
1826 opposition to widespread adherence to NPIs. Achieving widespread and persistent implementation of
1827 face mask use and voluntary home isolation can prove difficult, especially if access to supplies of
1828 face masks is limited; at-home isolation is difficult to enforce when called for. In fact, community-
1829 wide compliance with prophylactic regimens and isolation/quarantine restrictions has been
1830 problematic in past biological incidents.^{52,53} As demonstrated during the COVID-19 pandemic,
1831 isolation, quarantine, and stay-at-home orders can create feelings of frustration and anxiety due to
1832 the loss of routine and social interaction.^{54,55}

1833 Individuals within communities may be more likely to comply with personal NPIs if they receive
1834 information regarding the risks associated with non-compliance from trusted sources (refer to

⁵² Smith, L. E., D'Antoni, D., Jain, V., Pearce, J. M., Weinman, J., & Rubin, G. J. (2016). A systematic review of factors affecting intended and actual adherence with antiviral medication as treatment or prophylaxis in seasonal and pandemic flu. *Influenza and Other Respiratory Viruses* 10(6), 462–478. <https://doi.org/10.1111/irv.12406>

⁵³ Rothstein, M. A., & Talbott, M. K. (2007). Encouraging compliance with quarantine: a proposal to provide job security and income replacement. *American Journal of Public Health*, 97(Suppl 1), 49–S56. <https://doi.org/10.2105/AJPH.2006.097303>

⁵⁴ Brooks, S.K., Webster, R.K., Smith, L.E., Woodland, L., Wessely, S., Greenberg, N., & Rubin, G.J. (2020). The psychological impact of quarantine and how to reduce it: Rapid review of the evidence. *Lancet*, 395(10227), 912–920. [https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736\(20\)30460-8](https://doi.org/10.1016/S0140-6736(20)30460-8)

⁵⁵ Masters, N.B., Shih, S.F., Bukoff, A., Akel, K.B., Kobayashi, L.C., et al. (2020) Social distancing in response to the novel coronavirus (COVID-19) in the United States. *PLOS One*, 15(9): e0239025. <https://doi.org/10.1371/journal.pone.0239025>

1835 KPF 2, Communicate With External Partners and the Public), and if the NPIs are supported by
1836 local medical authorities, religious and community-based organizations, businesses, and
1837 government, and coupled with employer encouragement.

1838 The implementation of NPIs such as travel restrictions, school closures, and mandatory home
1839 isolation orders can also create ethical and legal concerns. For example, contact tracing combined
1840 with home quarantine may raise concerns regarding violations of privacy, equity, and freedom of
1841 movement, and infected individuals could become stigmatized. Similarly, school and other facility
1842 closures can disproportionately affect low-income families, including the homeless and those relying
1843 on state or local food programs, and people with disabilities and other vulnerable populations.⁵⁶
1844 Planners and local authorities will need to balance information on biological incident severity,
1845 spread, affected populations, and local response goals with a critical examination of the potential
1846 adverse effects of NPI measures.



Coordination Opportunity

1847

1848 Support collaboration between public health authorities, emergency managers, other relevant
1849 organizations, and local media to plan and execute engaging educational campaigns for the
1850 community on proper implementation of NPIs.

1851 Bring public health authorities, community leaders, local stakeholders, and business owners
1852 together to discuss potential economic and social ramifications of NPIs and incorporate these
1853 considerations into pre-incident planning.



Action Item

1854

1855 Consider the potential consequences of NPI implementation including civil rights, civil liberties,
1856 socio-economic, and financial impacts.

1857

- Work with public health authorities to determine data sources that can help identify
1858 appropriate triggers and relaxation indicators for NPIs.

1859

- Conduct thorough reviews of state, regional, and local plans for NPI implementation.

What will you need to know?

1860

1861 How will you support the communication of NPI guidance to the public?

⁵⁶ World Health Organization (WHO). (2019). *Global Influenza Programme: Non-pharmaceutical public health measures for mitigating the risk and impact of epidemic and pandemic influenza*.

<https://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/handle/10665/329438/9789241516839-eng.pdf>

- 1862 How can emergency management support implementation of NPIs in their respective
1863 communities (i.e., beyond messaging)?
- 1864 How long will the various types of NPI measures take to implement?
- 1865 What obstacles could decrease the effectiveness of certain NPI measures? How can these
1866 be overcome/planned for?
- 1867 How will planners help address the social and economic impacts that may result from
1868 closures and other more restrictive NPIs due to a biological incident?

1869 **3.2 Medical Countermeasures**

1870 Once the cause of disease is known, MCMs that effectively treat or prevent the disease can be
1871 utilized. Effective use of MCMs during a biological incident will not only help reduce the spread of
1872 disease but also reduce incidences of illness, thus reducing the burden on healthcare systems;
1873 often, MCMs will be paired with NPIs. MCMs include materials used to prevent, mitigate, or treat
1874 adverse health effects, such as pre- and post-exposure prophylaxes and therapeutics, diagnostic
1875 tests, and PPE. MCMs, such as antibiotics, antitoxins, vaccines, and antiviral drugs, can be used to
1876 treat patients with disease symptoms or to prevent and/or slow the development of disease in
1877 exposed or potentially exposed individuals. Prophylaxis may also be provided to individuals who are
1878 at high risk of being exposed during the response (e.g., first responders, human and veterinary
1879 healthcare providers, etc.). PPE such as protective clothing (e.g., gloves, gowns, etc.), eye protection
1880 (e.g., face shields or goggles), and masks or respiratory protection (e.g., disposable filtering
1881 facepiece respirators and positive air purifying respirators) are additional examples of MCMs that
1882 may be employed during a biological incident. The type of PPE employed will depend on the
1883 characteristics of the biological agent involved (i.e., pathogens transmitted through inhalation versus
1884 environmental contact or other exposures).



1885

1886

Figure 21: MCMs can include biologic products, drugs, and devices⁵⁷

1887 3.2.1 ACCESS TO MEDICAL COUNTERMEASURES

1888 State and local caches and hospital supplies can serve as sources of readily deployable MCMs that
1889 can be accessed quickly during emergencies. Hospital supplies may be available for immediate use
1890 while waiting for the arrival of supplies from other sources, but inventory is limited. Hospitals do not
1891 typically stock MCMs that are seldomly used (e.g., smallpox vaccines) and rarely have on hand more
1892 than a few weeks' supply of an MCM that would be used during the course of normal operations.
1893 Therefore, even if an MCM is available in a hospital (e.g., broad spectrum antibiotics), existing
1894 supplies alone would be insufficient to treat a surge of patients during a major, prolonged biological
1895 incident.

1896 States and localities may maintain their own MCM stockpiles, which may be forward-deployed within
1897 or near planned MCM dispensing sites.⁵⁸ Depending on the size and scope of a biological incident,
1898 the Strategic National Stockpile (SNS), managed by HHS ASPR, may be activated to provide speedy
1899 access to additional/alternative MCMs. Achieving efficient delivery of MCMs from storage sites to
1900 areas in need and then dispensing them to affected individuals requires carefully and
1901 comprehensively designed dispensing plans. Within the SNS, materials may be tracked by local and
1902 state public health leaders on the Inventory Management and Tracking System (IMATS). Distribution
1903 of SNS and state/local MCM caches, such as vaccines, antibiotics, and PPE, to affected populations
1904 will likely occur through Points of Dispensing (PODs), which are pre-identified sites planned to serve

⁵⁷ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2020). *Medical countermeasures can include biologic products, drugs, and devices* [Online image]. <https://www.cdc.gov/cpr/readiness/mcm-readiness.html>

⁵⁸ Stroud C., Viswanathan K., Powell T., & Bass, R.R. (Ed.). (2011). *Prepositioning Antibiotics for Anthrax*. National Academies. <https://doi.org/10.17226/13218>

1905 the dispensing/distribution needs of specific areas or populations. Considerations for the utilization
1906 of PODs during a biological incident are discussed in the callout box that follows.



1907

1908

Figure 22: HHS ASPR's Strategic National Stockpile (SNS) supplies⁵⁹

1909

Points of Dispensing (PODs)

1910

A POD is a community location where state and local agencies dispense MCMs to the public during a public health emergency. A system of PODs should be tailored to the specifics of the event, including the transmissibility of the pathogen, the uncertainty of the population at risk, and contamination caused by the incident, which will influence the location of the PODs and their number, layout, throughput, and extensive staffing needs. Additional considerations include ensuring the safety and security of the POD site, its staff, and the public. For intentional incidents, the threat of a follow-on attack at a POD location should be considered.

1911

1912

1913

1914

1915

1916

1917

Maintaining smooth community operations post-dispensing is important. This can be accomplished by planning for site clean-up, decontamination, and disposal of unused MCMs (or return to the SNS) and un-recoverable equipment. Medical care for staff who may become exposed while performing their duties also must be considered.

1918

1919

1920

⁵⁹ (Right) Strategic National Stockpile Communications Team (2015). [Photograph]. CDC. <https://phil.cdc.gov/Details.aspx?pid=22230>



Figure 23: Drive-through COVID-19 testing⁶⁰

1921

1922

1923



Coordination Opportunity

1924

1925

1926

1927

1928

Collaborate with public health officials and healthcare HCCs to determine how emergency management personnel, assets, and coordination mechanisms can support MCM dispensing and distribution. Work together to plan for disseminating information on who may need to use MCMs (e.g., testing, vaccines, PPE) with details on when, where, and how the public can access MCMs (e.g., location and hours of testing centers, vaccine clinics, or PPE distribution).

1929

1930

1931

Coordinate with public health officials and HCCs to facilitate POD operations. Coordinate with local private and public entities, NGOs, and Voluntary Organizations Active in Disaster (VOADs) to facilitate staffing needs for PODs.

1932

1933

Coordinate with tribes in your jurisdiction to ensure access to MCMs and resources to support POD operations.

1934



Action Item

1935

1936

1937

- Identify potential supply chain challenges for testing, diagnostic, treatment, and PPE supplies for public health and clinical healthcare. Work to develop contingency plans for shortages and alternative sources of supply and sustainment.

1938

1939

1940

- Ensure that POD plans are flexible to address the variety of biological incidents (including agents that are directly transmissible among people and incidents that cause contamination).

⁶⁰ Charles County Maryland. (n.d.). *Healthcare workers assist public in COVID-19 testing drive-through* [Photograph]. <https://www.charlescountymd.gov/government/other-agencies/charles-county-department-of-health-covid-19-updates/prevention-precautions/covid-19-testing>

- 1941 ▪ Ensure POD planners and law enforcement collaborate for site planning and assessment
- 1942 as well as to arrange appropriate site security.
- 1943 ▪ Exercise plans for MCM dispensing via PODs.
- 1944 ▪ Ensure local POD plans consider decontamination, demobilizing, and cleaning of POD sites
- 1945 after distribution activities. Plans should include personnel debriefing and the return of
- 1946 equipment and materials, as appropriate.
- 1947 ▪ Check the logistics aspects of your state and local MCM plans, including plans for the
- 1948 acceptance, warehousing, and distribution of SNS and other stockpiled resources.
- 1949 ▪ Ensure local public health authorities are familiar with SNS activation procedures. Check
- 1950 out your local public health department’s plans for MCM distribution.
- 1951 ▪ Work with public health and HCCs to determine what MCMs are available within your state
- 1952 and local caches that can effectively minimize the risk of disease transmission.
- 1953 – If MCMs are unavailable from government caches, where can they be procured? How
- 1954 reliable will these alternative sources of supply be in the context of biological incidents with
- 1955 widespread regional and/or national impacts?
- 1956 ▪ Formalize plans with jurisdictional health authorities that anticipate potential needs for
- 1957 critical funding to effectively mount a public health response.
- 1958 ▪ During planning, identify emergency protective measures that SLTT jurisdictions may
- 1959 request of FEMA under a Stafford Emergency Declaration (or Major Disaster Declaration).



Refer To

- 1961 ▪ HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National*
- 1962 *Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health* (2018), specifically
- 1963 Capability 8 – Medical Countermeasure Dispensing and Administration and Capability 9 –
- 1964 Medical Materiel Management and Distribution
- 1965 ▪ HHS APSR IMATS, which provides a mechanism to track large volumes of MCMs at the
- 1966 local and state level

What will you need to know?

- 1967 How will you coordinate with public health and HCCs to know if there are appropriate MCMs
- 1968 and enough supplies of MCMs in your jurisdiction?
- 1969
- 1970 ▪ How does the jurisdiction plan to track MCMs supply and burn rate? How will it work with
- 1971 private sector partners to accomplish MCM tracking?
- 1972 ▪ How does the jurisdiction plan to adjudicate resource assistance requests, determining
- 1973 those based on real need versus perceived need?

- 1974 ▪ What will you do if there is a shortage or appropriate MCMs are unavailable?
- 1975 ▪ What do state and local caches of MCMs contain, and where are they located? How can
- 1976 these caches be accessed?
- 1977 ▪ Who will you contact in your region to coordinate distribution of regional resources?
- 1978 ▪ What are the plans for SNS distribution in your state? In your region/locality?
- 1979 □ How can emergency management personnel or assets support MCM sites (e.g., PODs,
- 1980 testing centers, or vaccines clinics)?
- 1981 ▪ What sites are designated POD locations in your area?
- 1982 ▪ Are they accessible to vulnerable populations and underserved communities?
- 1983 □ How will you coordinate with animal health officials to know if veterinary MCMs are needed
- 1984 and available for household pets and service animals?
- 1985 □ How will you coordinate with public health, HCCs, and laboratories to know about the status
- 1986 of diagnostic testing capacity for your community?
- 1987 ▪ If labs are experiencing workforce shortages, supply shortages, or testing turnaround times
- 1988 are delayed, how will you know?

1989 **3.2.2 PLAN FOR MEDICAL COUNTERMEASURE CHALLENGES**

1990 MCM use in a biological incident is not without challenges. For example, because many MCMs treat

1991 or prevent only one disease (such as most vaccines), the identity of the pathogen causing the

1992 outbreak must be known before some MCMs may be deployed. The infectious agent may be

1993 intentionally (or, in some cases, naturally) altered to be resistant to available treatments, making the

1994 resulting disease more difficult to treat or untreatable with available MCMs. Alternatively, specific

1995 MCMs may not be available for the pathogen involved (e.g., a toxin or an emerging agent).



1996

1997

Figure 24: MCMs⁶¹

⁶¹ (Left) Food and Drug Administration (FDA). (2021). Vaccines [Photograph]. <https://www.fda.gov/vaccines-blood-biologics/vaccines>; (right) Taylor, R. (2013). CDC H7N9 diagnostic test kit [Photograph]. HHS CDC. <https://phil.cdc.gov/Details.aspx?pid=15707>

1998 Limited capacity for pathogen-specific diagnostic testing in public health laboratories (state and
1999 federal) and in independent, hospital, or academic clinical laboratories can present significant
2000 challenges to surge testing during a widescale biological outbreak. Staffing shortages, limited access
2001 to supplies, and increased demand for testing can all contribute to decreased turnaround times and
2002 slower test results. The type of testing sample (e.g., nasal swab or blood test) requires additional
2003 considerations for both sample collection and test site set up. Moreover, limitations in the availability
2004 and accessibility of community testing sites can hinder public health officials' ability to track local
2005 infection trends. These challenges in diagnostic testing can impede efforts to control disease spread
2006 and may be exacerbated during major communicable disease outbreaks.

2007 Not all biological incidents will require community-wide testing campaigns to control the spread of
2008 disease, such as incidents resulting from contaminated water or incidents involving non-
2009 communicable pathogens. When such campaigns are beneficial for controlling disease spread, their
2010 effectiveness will depend on the public's willingness and ability to participate in testing. Further, the
2011 public's willingness to comply with directives that hinge upon testing results (such as self-isolation or
2012 quarantine) will impact efforts to control disease spread. Perceived social stigma and potential
2013 threats to employment from positive results also can adversely affect compliance. Failure to provide
2014 clear and consistent messaging, coupled with the threat of individual social and economic impacts,
2015 can derail community-wide testing campaigns. (Refer to [KPF 2, Communicate with External Partners](#)
2016 [and the Public](#), for messaging strategies that will promote the public's confidence in the information
2017 they receive and their compliance with appropriate directives.)

2018



Coordination Opportunity

2019 Ensure collaboration between public health, emergency management, and HCC partners to
2020 engage a whole-of-community effort in developing, testing, and exercising MCM distribution
2021 and dispensing plans. Ensure all stakeholders understand the importance of providing
2022 consistent, coordinated, accurate, accessible, timely, and comprehensible information to the
2023 public.

2024



Action Item

- 2025 ▪ During biological incident planning, establish processes and procedures for collaboration
2026 and coordination between public health, private healthcare, and emergency management
2027 officials.
- 2028 ▪ Exercise plans for MCM dispensing and distribution with public health and HCC partners.

2029



Refer To

2030
2031

- The HHS [CDC Current Outbreak List](#) webpage for additional updated information regarding an emerging biological incident

2032

3.3 Environmental Containment and Source Reduction

2033
2034
2035
2036

Controlling the spread of the disease may require treating the environment and/or reducing access to contaminated food, water, and/or non-human reservoirs, as well as treating exposed people. Thus, responders will need to understand the biological agent's ability to persist in these environments to identify effective source control methods.

2037

3.3.1 WATER SYSTEMS

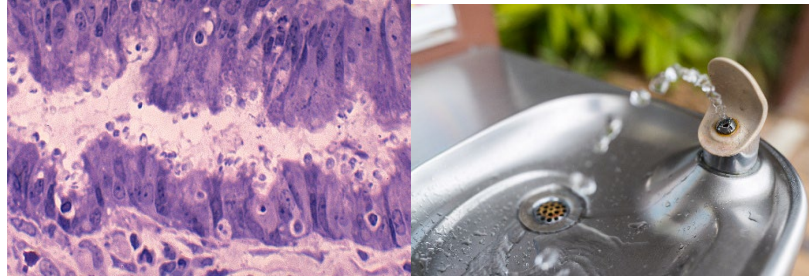
2038
2039
2040
2041
2042
2043
2044
2045
2046

Utility level water sources have strong source water protection, disinfection, filtration, and water quality monitoring processes and procedures. Utilities often can shut off their systems, or portions thereof, immediately after notification of a problem to help limit the spread of contaminants. In addition, drinking water advisories (e.g., Do-Not-Use) can protect the public from illness caused by biological agents within public water systems (refer to [KPF 2. Communicate with External Partners and the Public](#) for more information on communicating with the public). In fact, Do-Not-Use orders and alternate or emergency water supplies are a core part of local emergency planning in most areas of the U.S., allowing for the protection of public safety while experts engage in characterizing the biological threat.

2047
2048
2049
2050
2051

Many safeguards in place today for water systems are the result of lessons learned from the contamination of the Milwaukee, Wisconsin water system with *Cryptosporidium* in 1993. The chlorine-tolerant parasite caused the largest documented waterborne disease outbreak in U.S. history, sickening over 400,000 residents, killing 69 people, and prompting a 10-day boil water advisory that disrupted normal life in the community.⁶²

⁶² Gradus, Stephen. (2014, January 10). *Milwaukee, 1993: The Largest Documented Waterborne Disease Outbreak in US History*. Water Quality and Health Council. <https://waterandhealth.org/safe-drinking-water/drinking-water/milwaukee-1993-largest-documented-waterborne-disease-outbreak-history/>



2052

2053

2054

Figure 25: Organisms such as *Cryptosporidium* parasites can be introduced into the intestinal system by unsafe water sources⁶³

2055

3.3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL PERSISTENCE

2056

2057

2058

2059

2060

2061

2062

2063

2064

2065

2066

Containing or eliminating the source of the biological incident from the environment may be necessary because some biological agents can persist in the environment and can cause disease at some later time. The persistence of a biological agent in the environment is affected by many factors, including temperature, exposure to ultraviolet light, humidity, and the pH of water and soil. Some pathogens (e.g., airborne plague) persist for only a short of amount of time, while others pose long-term remediation challenges (e.g., anthrax spores).⁶⁴ In addition, environmental contamination may spread if the agent is tracked or distributed to new locations beyond the initial incident site by the movement of vehicles, people, or animals/vectors. Monitoring the ongoing presence and viability of a biological agent within the affected area may be challenging due to differences in biological agent characteristics, sample collection methods required (e.g., for air, water, soil, surfaces, etc.), specific testing availability, and testing laboratory capacity.

2067

3.3.3 WILDLIFE RESERVOIRS

2068

2069

2070

2071

2072

2073

2074

2075

2076

2077

2078

Several approaches can be taken to control the spread of disease in animal populations, including the use of vaccines (where available) and NPIs. When a disease reservoir exists or has been created in wild animals, wildlife management and disease control measures may be necessary in some cases to reduce the risk of disease transmission to people, livestock, and/or companion animals. Wildlife containment can be difficult and may involve manipulation of the habitat by the addition of fencing, controlled burns, or changes to available water and vegetation (food). Wildlife populations may be managed by treatment, vaccination, dispersal, selective culling, depopulation, or other interventions altering human behavior and minimizing interaction with wildlife. Defining the role played by wildlife in disease transmission of a biological agent, if any, is important for evaluating management options. For some pathogens, wild mammal and bird populations are likely to influence disease transmission in livestock and humans. When wild animal species interact or share an

⁶³ (Left) Ewing, E. (1982). *Cryptosporidium* [Photograph]. CDC. <https://phil.cdc.gov/Details.aspx?pid=550>

⁶⁴ Sinclair, R., Boone, S. A., Greenberg, D., Keim, P., & Gerba, C. P. (2008). Persistence of category A select agents in the environment. *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, 74(3), 555–563. <https://doi.org/10.1128/AEM.02167-07>

2079 environment with domestic livestock or poultry, humans and agricultural animals can potentially be
2080 exposed to a pathogen carried by wildlife. Wildlife populations are also dynamic, including local and
2081 migratory animals that change over time, so ongoing assessment of disease risk is necessary.



2082

2083 **Figure 26: Veterinarian performing necropsy on a dead Barbary sheep (*Ammotragus lervia*) to**
2084 **confirm anthrax diagnosis⁶⁵**

2085 3.3.4 VECTOR RESERVOIRS

2086 Many diseases that affect humans, livestock, companion animals, and/or wildlife are spread by
2087 vectors such as mosquitoes, fleas, and ticks. Control of vector-borne disease spread can be
2088 challenging to achieve as these populations are difficult to contain and may travel large distances.⁶⁶
2089 In the U.S., vector control is primarily left to the discretion of county or municipal governments, and
2090 public health departments typically take the lead on vector control issues affecting human health.
2091 Local governments and mosquito control programs often use a combination of methods to control
2092 mosquitoes (integrated vector management)⁶⁷ since insecticides and other chemical methods are
2093 often an inefficient means of controlling vector populations. Multiple applications are typically
2094 needed, improper use may contribute to vector resistance or reduce their effectiveness, and some

⁶⁵ Kelly, J. (2001). *Investigating an Anthrax epizootic* [Photograph]. <https://phil.cdc.gov/Details.aspx?pid=22487>

⁶⁶ World Health Organization (WHO). (2020, March). *Vector-borne diseases* [Fact sheet]. <https://www.who.int/news-room/fact-sheets/detail/vector-borne-diseases#:~:text=Vector%2Dborne%20diseases%20account%20for,infection%20transmitted%20by%20Anopheline%20mosquitoes>.

⁶⁷ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2021, September 9). *Mosquito Control in a Community*. National Center for Emerging and Zoonotic Infectious Diseases, Division of Vector-Borne Diseases. <https://www.cdc.gov/mosquitoes/mosquito-control/community/index.html>

2095 can be harmful to humans and animals.⁶⁸ The timing of insecticide application can also be important
2096 for interrupting disease transmission as evidenced by the WNV outbreak, wherein attempts to
2097 prevent human cases failed when insecticide applications were delayed.⁶⁹



2098

2099

Figure 27: Examples of vectors⁷⁰

2100 The public also can take steps to reduce mosquito populations and avoid exposure to ticks.
2101 Educational campaigns should be used to encourage the public to engage in source reduction
2102 activities that eliminate or remove the habitats that produce the vectors. For mosquitoes, source
2103 reduction often means reducing access to standing water where eggs would be laid and hatch; for
2104 ticks, it might mean keeping grass mowed.

2105



Coordination Opportunity

2106

Consider collaboration with the following:

2107

- Local public health, environmental health, and water authorities to plan for environmental containment and source reduction during a biological incident

2108

2109

- Natural resources and wildlife management authorities to plan for and implement appropriate disease control procedures for wildlife populations

2110

⁶⁸ U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) Veterinary Services (VS). (2014). *FAD PReP NAHEMS Guidelines: Wildlife Management and Vector Control for a Foreign Animal Disease Response in Domestic Livestock*. https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/emergency_management/downloads/FAD-PReP_NAHEMS_Guidelines.pdf

⁶⁹ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) Division of Vector-Borne Diseases. (2013). *West Nile Virus in the United States: Guidelines for Surveillance, Prevention, and Control*. (4th ed.). <https://www.cdc.gov/westnile/resources/pdfs/wnvGuidelines.pdf>

⁷⁰ (Left) Ellis, S. (n.d.). *Asian tiger mosquito, adult* [Photograph]. <https://www.invasivespeciesinfo.gov/terrestrial/invertebrates/asian-tiger-mosquito>; (middle) U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Forest Service (FS). (n.d.). *Lone star tick* [Photograph]. <https://www.fs.usda.gov/visit/know-before-you-go/ticks>; (right) USDA. (2016). *Aphthona flava flea beetle feeding on leafy spurge* [Photograph]. <https://www.ars.usda.gov/oc/images/photos/mar00/k2602-4>

- 2111 ▪ Veterinary community to plan for disease prevention and public education efforts
2112 surrounding companion animal vaccinations and flea and tick preventive medications
- 2113 ▪ Local vector control programs to plan for and implement appropriate vector control
2114 interventions and public education on vector control



Action Item

- 2116 ▪ Develop a biological incident emergency water supply plan from existing all-hazard
2117 emergency plans. Incorporate a strategic drinking water advisory communication plan and
2118 alternative water supply plan, including the large-scale procurement and distribution of
2119 bottled water, as required.
- 2120 ▪ Ensure alternative water supply plans are accessible, address the needs of vulnerable
2121 populations and socio-economically disadvantaged communities, and include affordability
2122 protections.
- 2123 ▪ Plan and exercise water system emergency procedures with stakeholders to define roles
2124 and responsibilities and to practice drinking water advisory communications.
- 2125 ▪ Planners should familiarize themselves with technical options for environmental
2126 containment, and actions that can be taken to prevent contamination spread.



Refer To

- 2128 ▪ CDC [*Drinking Water Advisory Communication Toolbox*](#) (2016) for advisory guidance
- 2129 ▪ EPA [*Planning for an Emergency Drinking Water Supply*](#) (2011) for information on the roles
2130 and responsibilities of various levels of government when addressing emergency water
2131 supply
- 2132 ▪ EPA water systems [Public Notification Templates for Community and Non-transient Non-](#)
2133 [community Water Systems](#) templates
- 2134 ▪ EPA [*Full-Scale Decontamination of Bacillus Spores from Drinking Water Infrastructure*](#)
2135 (2019) for a description of drinking water infrastructure decontamination
- 2136 ▪ EPA [Water Contaminant Information Tool](#) (WCIT) includes comprehensive information
2137 about contaminants that could be introduced into a water system (registration needed)
- 2138 ▪ CDC [Emergency Water Supply Planning Guide for Hospitals and Healthcare Facilities](#)
- 2139 ▪ EPA [Contaminant Fate, Transport, and Exposure](#) webpage that provides information on
2140 agent persistence and transport in the environment
- 2141 ▪ [United States Animal Health Association](#) and/or the [National Association of State Public](#)
2142 [Health Veterinarians](#) webpages to find information on your state or local public health
2143 veterinarians

- 2144 ▪ HHS CDC [One Health](#) and [Healthy Pets, Healthy People](#) webpages for information on
2145 zoonotic diseases and related One Health issues in livestock, companion animals, and
2146 wildlife
- 2147 ▪ [NAHEMS Guidelines: Wildlife Management and Vector Control for a Foreign Animal](#)
2148 [Disease Response in Domestic Livestock](#) (2014) for information on relevant management
2149 and disease control measures
- 2150 ▪ HHS CDC Environmental Health Services [Vector Control Resources](#) and the [Division of](#)
2151 [Vector-Borne Diseases](#) webpages for additional information about preventing and
2152 controlling diseases spread by mosquitoes, ticks, and fleas, and the [Mosquitoes](#) webpage
2153 for more information and public communication resources

2154 **What will you need to know?**

- 2155 Who has authority to shut down contaminated water systems?
- 2156 How is the decision made to issue drinking water advisories and alternate water supply
2157 guidance?
- 2158 Are healthcare facilities, dialysis centers, and sterile reprocessing facilities prepared to
2159 address disruptions in potable water services?

2160 **3.4 Human, Animal, Equipment, and Site Decontamination**

2161 Persistent biological agents may require decontamination. Successful decontamination of sites,
2162 equipment, people, and/or animals requires specialized response planning and protocols, trained
2163 personnel, personal protection supplies and equipment such as PPE (e.g., masks, gloves,
2164 respirators), disinfectants/chemicals (e.g., bleach), and specialized equipment (e.g., tents,
2165 handwashing stations).

2166 Site and equipment decontamination procedures will vary based on the nature of the incident since
2167 pathogens differ in susceptibility to decontaminant solutions/treatments, some of which are
2168 effective only on certain surface types (e.g., porous vs. nonporous). Depending on site
2169 characteristics, a variety of decontamination treatments may be used. For example, buildings may be
2170 fumigated, vacuumed, sprayed with a bleach solution, washed, scrubbed, or rinsed. In general,
2171 equipment will be treated with peroxide, exposed to ultraviolet light, or autoclaved. Decontamination
2172 support is further discussed in [KPF 4, Augment Provision of Mass Care and Human Services to the](#)
2173 [Affected Population](#).



2174

2175

Figure 28: Decontamination needs may vary based on incident specifics

2176 **3.4.1 PLAN FOR DECONTAMINATION CHALLENGES**

2177 Site and equipment decontamination efforts may face challenges associated with the selection of an
2178 appropriate decontamination method(s), and the availability of time, materials, and trained
2179 personnel needed for the method selected. In the case of a few agents, contamination could result
2180 in long-term or even permanent closure of buildings or public spaces as site decontamination may
2181 take an extended period of time.⁷¹ Effective site decontamination relies on environmental sampling
2182 to identify the boundaries of contamination. In a biological incident, laboratory results for
2183 environmental samples may not be available quickly, especially when laboratory capacities are
2184 stretched to perform analysis on clinical samples. Further, testing needs may be complex, as
2185 knowing whether or not the agent is still present in the site or on equipment is not enough; rather,
2186 knowing whether any agent present is still infectious is key for understanding remaining risk.

2187 The need for human decontamination in a biological incident is rare since, in many cases, a
2188 biological incident may go unnoticed for several days (refer to KPF 1, Detect and Characterize the
2189 Threat), during which time contaminated people have bathed and changed clothes, and the
2190 biological agent may have naturally decayed. However, when the release event is “announced” (for
2191 example, if there is an announced attack or a “white powder incident”), personal decontamination
2192 procedures would be initiated. Then, individuals with suspected contamination and/or exposure to a
2193 biological agent would be thoroughly rinsed, with clothing and personal items removed for separate
2194 decontamination. Success in these efforts requires attention to crowd control, cultural sensitivities
2195 around privacy/modesty, the needs of people with disabilities, non-ambulatory people, and other
2196 considerations. Following decontamination, individuals should be given information on potential
2197 symptoms, advised to monitor themselves, family members, and other acquaintances for these
2198 symptoms, and guided to follow-up care, should symptoms develop. Consultations between public
2199 health and animal health officials should occur to determine whether companion and service animal

⁷¹ U.S. Department of Homeland Security (DHS). (2017). *Biological Incident Annex to the Response and Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plans*. https://www.fema.gov/sites/default/files/2020-07/fema_incident-annex_biological.pdf

2200 decontamination is needed and whether it would follow human decontamination efforts, using
2201 similar procedures.⁷²

2202 Dedicated hazardous materials (HAZMAT) teams with additional containment and cleanup
2203 capabilities can augment the response. In major jurisdictions, these teams will follow quickly on the
2204 heels of initial responding units; however, this specialized response capability will vary significantly
2205 by jurisdiction.

2206 Management/containment and safe storage of contaminated waste, including wastewater run-off
2207 from human, animal, and equipment decontamination activities, will pose additional challenges due
2208 to storage limitations and the requirement for processing by specially licensed facilities. Waste
2209 management considerations are discussed further in KPF 6, Augment Essential Services to Achieve
2210 Recovery Outcomes.

2211 **Clearance Goals**

2212 Clearance goals are goals or criteria for human, animal, or site cleanup and decontamination
2213 that describe the amount of residual contaminant remaining in an area, on an item, or on a
2214 person following cleanup activities that is deemed to pose “acceptable” risks to human, animal,
2215 and/or environmental health. “Clearance” of a person, area, item, or infrastructure indicates
2216 these criteria have been met. Unlike chemical or radiological incidents, where there is some
2217 amount of residual material that does not pose a risk to human, animal, and environmental
2218 health, in biological incidents, a single, viable pathogen can infect a host and lead to disease.
2219 Therefore, the presence of any viable pathogen in an area following a biological incident typically
2220 is enough to keep that area closed. Clearance goals will be set by experts and community
2221 leaders, stakeholders, and authorities with this in mind; once set, timely and clear
2222 communication of clearance guidelines to the affected community will help reduce public anxiety
2223 and improve the effectiveness and efficiency of post-incident response and recovery activities.
2224 Even so, limited availability of resources, such as personnel, PPE, and testing and detection
2225 equipment, may impact the community’s ability to achieve clearance goals.

2226  Refer To

2227 EPA Publications on Homeland Security Research Topics webpage for additional information
2228 on decontamination, sampling and analysis, remediation of biological contamination (waste
2229 management, water infrastructure incident response, and more), which includes:

- 2230 ▪ EPA Personnel Decontamination Line Sprayer Options for Biological Contamination
2231 Incident Response (2020) for information on conducting personnel decontamination

- 2232 ▪ *A Review of Biological Agent Sampling Methods and Application to a Wide-Area Incident*
2233 *Scenario to Characterize Time and Resource Demands* (2017) and *Bio-Response*
2234 *Operational Testing and Evaluation Project – Phase 1: Decontamination Assessment*
2235 (2013) that discuss biological incident exercise-based information regarding wide-area
2236 sampling plans and how the number of samples taken impacts resource requirements,
2237 cost, and time to conduct sampling, analysis, decontamination, and waste generation
- 2238 National Alliance of State Animal and Agricultural Emergency Programs (NASAAEP) *Emergency*
2239 *Animal Decontamination Best Practices* (2014) for practical information regarding planning,
2240 training, and exercising for emergency animal decontamination.
- 2241 HHS ASPR *Topic Collection: Veterinary Issues* for more information that addresses disaster-
2242 related animal issues, including animal decontamination.
- 2243 For issues related to livestock and poultry, refer to DHS *National Food and Agriculture Incident*
2244 *Annex to the Response and Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plans* (FAIA; FIOPs)
2245 (2019)



Coordination Opportunity

- 2246
- 2247 Work with public health and environmental health experts, community leaders, and
2248 stakeholders to support decision-making processes for biological decontamination activities,
2249 including:
- 2250 ▪ Setting clearance goals specific to biological incident remediation
- 2251 ▪ Selecting appropriate environmental remediation options
- 2252 ▪ Allocating resources
- 2253 ▪ Determining biological waste management needs
- 2254 Establish pre-incident MOAs and MOUs for decontamination resource sharing with neighboring
2255 jurisdictions.



Action Item

- 2256
- 2257 ▪ Develop a plan for assessing the nature and extent of infrastructure contamination and for
2258 cleaning up and/or decontaminating as needed.
- 2259 ▪ Identify key decision makers and establish coordination processes for key decisions that
2260 will need to be made; determine the minimum information needed to make those
2261 decisions and potential sources for this information.
- 2262 ▪ Establish default response actions to use when event-specific information is not available.



What would you do?

2263

2264

...when an owner and service animal both require decontamination?

2265

What will you need to know?

2266

Who is responsible for setting local clearance goals?

2267

How are critical areas for decontamination identified?

2268

Who are the local or state agencies with regulatory authority? Who holds local authority for remediating public and/or private buildings?

2269

2270

What are the decontamination resources (equipment, personnel, etc.) in your region?

2271

What are their capabilities and capacities?

2272

Who will you contact?

2273

Does your jurisdiction have a HAZMAT team? If so, are they trained for biological incidents?

2274

What locations in your community are available and accessible for staging decontamination?

2275

What are their capacity/capability limitations? How many stations will you need to service your population?

2276

2277

What additional considerations will be required for decontamination of those with disabilities, including those who are non-ambulatory?

2278

2279

What veterinary services will you need for animal decontamination?

2280

What type of decontamination support can you offer small businesses?

2281

What are the legal requirements for biohazardous waste disposal for the involved agent?

2282

How will you know if the chemicals used for decontamination affect the environment?

2283

Which SMEs, organizations, or agencies will you collaborate with to plan for environmental recovery after decontamination?

2284

2285

What local facilities are available for safe storage of decontamination waste/materials?

2286

What biohazardous waste disposal facilities are located in your region, including licensed contractors/facilities? Is there an established MOU or MOA?

2287

2288

What are their capabilities and capacities?

2289

Is sufficient transportation service support available? If not, how/where will you obtain service?

2290

2291

How will contaminated remains be handled?

2292

What are the laws regarding transportation of select agents in your region?

2293

What entities are available to transport select agents in your region?

2294 Who will you contact?

2295 **3.5 Federal Assistance for Controlling the Spread of Disease**

2296 During some biological incidents, federal support may be necessary to help control the spread of
2297 disease. For MCMs, HHS may support SLTT jurisdictions in several ways. As mentioned above, the
2298 SNS, which is managed by HHS ASPR, is composed of pharmaceuticals (e.g., vaccines, antibiotics,
2299 etc.), PPE, and medical supplies (e.g., equipment, surgical items, etc.) that may be required to
2300 control and/or respond to a public health emergency.⁷³ SNS resources can be deployed to an
2301 incident area following a request from the governor of the affected state. Once delivered, the state is
2302 responsible for resource distribution; each state maintains its own distribution plan. When animals
2303 are involved in a biological incident, the National Veterinary Services can provide vaccines as well as
2304 equipment for use in veterinary emergencies, including PPE and euthanasia/decontamination
2305 supplies.⁷⁴

2306 HHS ASPR also provides the TRACIE, which was created to meet the information and technical
2307 assistance needs of regional ASPR staff, HCCs, healthcare entities, healthcare providers, emergency
2308 managers, public health practitioners, and others working in disaster medicine, healthcare system
2309 preparedness, and public health emergency preparedness. Technical resources include a self-
2310 service collection of disaster medical, healthcare, and public health preparedness materials,
2311 searchable by keywords and functional areas.⁷⁵

2312 For environmental containment and decontamination, multiple federal entities may assist SLTT
2313 jurisdictions. Under ESF #10 of the NRF, the EPA is responsible for the remediation of land and
2314 public infrastructure following a biological contamination incident, including acts of bioterrorism. In
2315 addition, specially trained personnel from HHS CDC, DOJ FBI, and other federal agencies are
2316 available to support decontamination efforts during biological incident response.

⁷³ Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR) Technical Resources, Assistance Center, and Information Exchange (TRACIE). (2022, February 14). *Topic Collection: Mass Distribution and Dispensing of Medical Countermeasures*. <https://asprtracie.hhs.gov/technical-resources/67/mass-distribution-and-dispensing-of-medical-countermeasures/0>

⁷⁴ U.S. Department of Agriculture Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) Veterinary Services (VS). (2021, April 20). *National Veterinary Stockpile (NVS)*. https://www.aphis.usda.gov/aphis/ourfocus/animalhealth/emergency-management/nvs/CT_Nvs

⁷⁵ Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR) Technical Resources, Assistance Center, and Information Exchange (TRACIE). (2022, February 14). *Welcome to ASPR TRACIE*. <https://asprtracie.hhs.gov/>



2317

2318

Figure 29: Brentwood postal facility decontamination

2319 To address wildlife disease and vector reservoirs, USDA APHIS will work in close collaboration,
2320 communication, and coordination with the U.S. DOI and other FSLTT agencies that have primary
2321 jurisdictional authority and subject matter expertise for wildlife.⁷⁶ In wildlife disease incidents that
2322 may affect public health, USDA APHIS and DOI will collaborate with FSLTT public health agencies.
2323 HHS CDC helps track human cases of vector-borne diseases.⁷⁷ In vector-borne agricultural disease
2324 incidents that also involve public health, USDA APHIS collaborates with HHS CDC.⁷⁸

⁷⁶ Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) Veterinary Services (VS). (2014). *FAD PReP NAHEMS Guidelines: Wildlife Management and Vector Control for a Foreign Animal Disease Response in Domestic Livestock*. https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/emergency_management/downloads/FAD-PReP_NAHEMS_Guidelines.pdf

⁷⁷ Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). (2022, February 11). *Division of Vector-Borne Diseases*. <https://www.cdc.gov/nceid/dvbd/index.html>

⁷⁸ U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS) Veterinary Services (VS). (2014). *FAD PReP NAHEMS Guidelines: Wildlife Management and Vector Control for a Foreign Animal Disease Response in Domestic Livestock*. https://www.aphis.usda.gov/animal_health/emergency_management/downloads/FAD-PReP_NAHEMS_Guidelines.pdf



2325

2326

Figure 30: Coordination between SLTT partners during a public health emergency⁷⁹

2327



Refer To

2328

- Strategic National Stockpile webpage for information regarding contents and access

2329

- Public Readiness and Emergency Preparedness (PREP) Act for information on the legal liability surrounding MCM distribution as well as declarations made by the HHS Secretary to provide immunity from tort liability related to MCM distribution

2330

2331

2332

- HHS ASPR TRACIE Topic Collection: Mass Distribution and Dispensing of Medical Countermeasures for a host of resources describing lessons learned, plans, tools, and courses for MCM administration and distribution, including POD-specific information.

2333

2334

2335

- DHS National Response Framework (NRF), Emergency Support Function #10: Oil and Hazardous Materials Response Annex (2016) for coordination of actions to prevent, mitigate, stabilize (prevent spread), and/or clean up releases, and efforts to develop recommendations for public protective actions

2336

2337

2338

⁷⁹ Centers for Disease Control (CDC). (2021, January 25). *SLTT partners coordinate during a public health emergency* [Photograph]. <https://www.cdc.gov/cpr/readiness/capabilities.htm>

2339 **KPF 4: Augment Provision of Mass Care and Human**
2340 **Services to the Affected Population**

2341 When mass care services are required during a biological incident, specific infection prevention
2342 procedures and protocols may need to be followed based upon the pathogen causing the
2343 incident. Most biological incidents will not require mass care services of the type and/or on the
2344 scale that may be needed in the context of other major disasters such as wildfires or hurricanes.
2345 Typically, mass care provides life-sustaining support to disaster-affected populations and
2346 comprises seven principal activities. These are sheltering; feeding; distribution of emergency
2347 supplies; support for individuals with disabilities and others with access and functional needs;
2348 reunification services for adults and children; support for household pets, service animals, and
2349 assistance animals; and mass evacuee support. Affected communities are also likely to face
2350 mental health challenges during and following a biological incident. Traditional mass care
2351 activities may be more limited in scope and will need to be adapted to the specific
2352 circumstances of a particular biological incident. Within this KPF, mass care services are
2353 discussed in terms of shelter-in-place or restricted movement scenarios, feeding operations
2354 during larger-scale/longer duration non-evacuation scenarios, evacuation and post-evacuation
2355 scenarios, and public fear and mental health impacts. Innovative and creative mass care
2356 services may be needed to facilitate the distribution of emergency supplies and assistance and
2357 support the whole community during the response. For complex, large-scale biological incidents,
2358 mass care approaches (including capacities, equipment requirements, and management of
2359 vulnerable populations) may require significant operational adjustments.

2360 **4.1 Mass Care Considerations for Shelter-In-Place or Restricted Movement**
2361 **Scenarios**

2362 **4.1.1 SHELTERING-IN-PLACE, NON-CONGREGATE SHELTERING, MOBILITY**
2363 **RESTRICTIONS, AND WIDESPREAD VENUE CLOSURES**

2364 A natural, accidental, or intentional outbreak of a highly contagious disease could result in a
2365 community being asked to shelter-in-place⁸⁰ (staying at home) based on a public health order. A
2366 large, outdoor attack could result in individuals in the affected area being advised to shelter-in-place
2367 at a specific location or within their homes for a short period of time to prevent them from being

⁸⁰ FEMA defines shelter-in-place as the use of a structure to temporarily separate individuals from a hazard or threat. Sheltering-in-place is the primary protective action in many cases. Often it is safer for individuals to shelter-in-place than to try to evacuate. Sheltering-in-place is appropriate when conditions necessitate that individuals seek protection in their home, place of employment, or other location when disaster strikes. More information can be found in FEMA's *Planning Considerations: Evacuation and Shelter-In-Place* (2019).

2368 exposed to the biological agent and to protect them from a potential secondary attack. (Refer to [KPF](#)
2369 [3, Control the Spread of Disease](#), for additional information on these protective actions.)

2370 An epidemic or pandemic caused by a highly transmissible agent may result in the closure of
2371 schools, businesses, and other public venues. Additional NPIs may also be advised, and sheltering-
2372 in-place could be necessary for an extended length of time. Shelter-in-place plans should include the
2373 whole community, with specialized considerations for vulnerable populations and those requiring
2374 access to essential medical services (i.e., dialysis, methadone, etc.) and/or medical supplies and
2375 other life-sustaining care. Existing all-hazards plans for sheltering-in-place may not be sufficient
2376 during a biological incident due to the potential need for specific infection control measures (e.g.,
2377 hand hygiene, wearing PPE, social distancing, disinfecting surfaces and spaces, etc.) to minimize the
2378 risk of pathogen transmission between responders and sheltered populations during the provision of
2379 mass care services. Biological incident plans also must account for the possibility of workforce
2380 shortages (e.g., significant numbers of staff and volunteers ill or quarantined and unable to
2381 participate in provision of mass care services) and traditional community mass care services being
2382 stretched to capacity. Planners should work with public health authorities, HCCs, and other
2383 appropriate partners to adapt mass care plans to meet the needs of sheltered populations, including
2384 routine feeding, prescription refills, coordination of transportation to medical appointments, access
2385 to veterinary services, etc. based on the biological incident environment.

2386 In addition to sheltering-in-place, non-congregate sheltering (e.g., the use of hotels, public venues,
2387 private property, etc.) of certain populations may be necessary during a biological incident to protect
2388 public health and save lives. Examples of potential targeted populations include those who test
2389 positive and do not require hospitalization but should be isolated (including those exiting from
2390 hospitals); those who have been exposed but do not require hospitalization; and asymptomatic high-
2391 risk individuals subject to social distancing protocols as a precautionary measure.

2392 Plans for sheltering-in-place and non-congregate sheltering should incorporate considerations for
2393 meeting the basic needs of the community affected, such as ensuring access to adequate food and
2394 water supplies for all, again including vulnerable populations and pets and service animals. All these
2395 needs will become more acute the longer sheltering-in-place, non-congregate sheltering, and/or
2396 venue closures extend; additional challenges will arise if business closures lead to loss of income for
2397 individuals or households.

2398  Refer To

2399 DHS [Planning Considerations: Evacuation and Shelter-in-Place, Guidance for State, Local,](#)
2400 [Tribal, and Territorial Partners](#) (2019) for critical considerations on accommodating vulnerable
2401 populations in shelters

2402



Coordination Opportunity

2403
2404
2405

Coordinate with community public health authorities, HCCs, and professionals such as social workers who are experienced in working with vulnerable populations to help develop plans that will meet the needs of all sheltered-in-place persons during a biological incident.

2406
2407

Coordinate with hospitality industry to plan for feeding, sheltering, and hosting distribution sites.

2408



Action Item

2409
2410

- Become familiar with state, regional, and local plans for mass care and human services specific to biological incidents, as well as plans for animal services.

2411
2412

- Determine resources and requirements for mass care and human services needed for biological incident response and recovery.

2413
2414
2415
2416
2417
2418

- Establish mechanisms to ensure efficient and effective delivery of all needed services. Confirm voluntary and NGO partners have biological incident plans and determine their availability to support human services needs during a biological incident, including considerations for the disabled and other vulnerable populations. Plan for variation in scope based on biological agent and duration of sheltering-in-place and non-congregate sheltering conditions.

2419
2420
2421
2422
2423
2424
2425

- Plan for special scenarios such as transporting and housing service animals accompanying people who require quarantine or isolation due to the nature of a specific biological incident. If it's unsafe for the service animal and its owner to interact while the person is in quarantine or isolation (e.g., possibility of disease transmission across species), arrangements must be made for the person to receive the service typically provided by the animal in another way, and arrangements must be made for the animal while the person is quarantined or isolated.

2426

What will you need to know?

2427
2428

- How will you adapt existing shelter-in-place and non-congregate shelter plans for the biological incident environment?

2429
2430

- How will you keep responders and impacted populations safe and minimize the risk of disease transmission during the provision of mass care services?

2431
2432

- Who will you collaborate with to develop pathogen-specific infection prevention and control measures in the context of mass care?

2433
2434

- How would a shortage of available first responders or mass care volunteer workers impact the feasibility of your plan?

- 2435 Who will you coordinate with to understand possible disease risks associated with household
2436 pets and service animals?
- 2437
 - 2438 Who can provide guidance on whether a pet can transmit the pathogen to a human or a
2439 human can transmit the pathogen to a pet?
 - 2440 How will you support mass care services for household pets and service animals in a safe
2441 manner for responders, survivors, and the animals?
- 2442 What accommodations will be made for individuals in need of additional assistance in the
2443 context of a biological incident?
- 2444
 - 2445 How will underserved populations, those with disabilities, populations living in institutional
2446 settings, older populations, children, homeless populations, populations with limited English
2447 proficiency, transient populations (tourists, students, hospitality workers), populations with
2448 mobility or transportation challenges, among others, be accommodated?
- 2449 Which aspects of mass care will your jurisdiction be able to provide to owners and their pets
2450 at the same time? How will you provide mass care services for pets?
- 2451 What accommodations will be made for service animals (e.g., pet food, medications) that
2452 shall be treated as required by law (e.g., the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990)? How?

2451 **4.2 Mass Care Consideration for Feeding Operations During Larger- 2452 Scale/Longer-Duration Scenarios (Non-Evacuation Scenarios)**

2453 **4.2.1 PROVIDING FOOD AND WATER**

2454 During large-scale or longer-duration biological incidents, critical disruption in food supply chains
2455 may create challenges in obtaining food and water. Impacted populations, including those who are
2456 non-ambulatory and those that remain mobile but are under social distancing restrictions, may
2457 require sustained feeding and hydration support if normal access to food retailers is restricted or
2458 eliminated or there is limited supply, particularly in major urban areas. The provision of food and
2459 water to those in need may also be necessary in instances where families find themselves in an
2460 adverse financial situation based on the economic impacts of a sustained biological incident (e.g.,
2461 job loss, price inflation, etc.). Depending on the level of risk, this may result in a need for mass
2462 dispensing sites and/or home delivery for individuals who are mobility challenged or cannot leave
2463 their locations based on their personal health status. Examples of supportive actions include:

- 2464
 - 2465 Purchasing, packaging, and/or preparing meals
 - 2466 Delivering food to distribution points and/or individuals, when conditions constitute a level of
2467 severity such that food is not easily accessible for purchase or affordable



2467

2468 **Figure 31: Public health measures may create supply chain interruptions impacting feeding⁸¹**

2469 The traditional model of using mostly volunteers for the preparation and distribution of food to at-risk
2470 populations may not be sustainable during a biological incident and, therefore, may require a mix of
2471 public-private collaboration and contracting.

2472 In addition to food, access to clean water must be maintained for all affected populations. If a
2473 biological incident compromises a community’s water supply (e.g., *Cryptosporidium* or Legionnaires’
2474 disease outbreak), mass care services may be required to provide individuals with potable water
2475 until the source is decontaminated and safe for drinking again. (Refer to KPF 3, Control the Spread
2476 of Disease, for more information on environmental containment and source reduction.)

2477



Refer To

- 2478 ▪ USDA Food and Nutrition Service (FNS) *USDA Foods Program Disaster Manual* (2014)
- 2479 ▪ FEMA *Mass Care/Emergency Assistance Pandemic Planning Considerations* (2020)
- 2480 Appendix B

2481



Coordination Opportunity

2482 Partner with the private sector, food banks, NGOs, VOADs, and/or National Guard to provide
2483 hot, nutritious meals to individuals with restricted mobility, those who cannot access traditional
2484 sources of food supplies, or those who have been financially impacted by a biological incident.

⁸¹ Mpi34/MediaPunch/IPX/AP. (2022). *A view of empty shelves at a local Giant supermarket on January 9, 2022 in Alexandria, Virginia* [Photograph]. <https://www.cnn.com/2022/01/11/business-food/grocery-store-shelves-empty/index.html>

2485 Coordinate with public health and water authorities to understand any biological incident
2486 affecting local water supply, consistently message updates to the community, and provide
2487 clean water to any individuals in need.



Action Item

2488

2489

- Ensure adequate feeding plans are in place and coordinated based on the specifics of the

- 2490 biological incident environment, including consideration of contractual agreements and

- 2491 federal funds (if required), in accordance with federal procurement standards. Identify

- 2492 alternate options for maintaining delivery capabilities.

2493

- Develop plans to establish feeding operations to meet the needs of the whole community.

- 2494 Establish agreements with local food services to adapt and expand services to meet

- 2495 changing needs. Ensure mass care feeding plans consider dietary restrictions (i.e., low

- 2496 sodium, gluten intolerance, etc.).

2497

- Coordinate with NGOs and VOADs to determine services and agreements for aid during a

- 2498 biological incident, potentially through implementation of a tool like the Multi-Agency

- 2499 Feeding Plan Template from National VOAD.

2500

- Consider coordination between meal preparation and delivery services, such as Meals on

- 2501 Wheels and local school systems.

What will you need to know?

2502

2503 How will you identify best practices for large-scale food dispensing centers and coordinate
2504 plans for mass food and water pickup at specially established food dispensing locations?

2505 What accommodations need to be made for delivering/dispensing food to those with dietary
2506 restrictions during a biological incident?

2507 What will be needed to ensure safety of those delivering food or water assistance to
2508 impacted populations?

4.3 Mass Care Considerations for Evacuation and Post-Evacuation Scenarios

2509
2510

2511 Certain types of biological incidents may call for the evacuation of one or more elements of the
2512 affected population. Although uncommon, an incident involving the large-scale dispersion of a
2513 biological agent that can persist in the environment, potentially as the result of an attack or an
2514 accidental release, could result in the need for people in the affected area to evacuate the impacted
2515 structure or area (see KPF 3, Control the Spread of Disease, for further discussion of evacuation and
2516 sheltering). If homes have been contaminated with a persistent biological agent, expanded mass
2517 care services (e.g., temporary housing) may need to be provided for the affected population.
2518 Lingering contamination or exposure concerns following these types of biological incidents may delay

2519 recovery activities or extend recovery timelines, potentially prolonging survivors' needs for mass care
2520 and human services for weeks to months to years.

2521 Evacuation may also be caused by another type of disaster, happening concurrently with a biological
2522 incident, such as a hurricane or series of major tornadoes impacting an area already facing an
2523 epidemic. These types of concurrent disaster events may result in significant needs for adapted
2524 mass care services. Natural disasters can result in major evacuation and/or sheltering of
2525 populations, and a concurrent biological incident may pose threats to traditional feeding and
2526 sheltering activities. Conventional procedures for assisting disaster survivors and providing mass
2527 care services may need to be modified to prevent disease transmission among survivors and service
2528 providers.



2529

Figure 32: Concurrent disaster events and epidemics may complicate sheltering and evacuation⁸²

2530
2531

2532 In both cases, the transmissibility of the pathogen involved may constrain the ability to provide mass
2533 care and emergency assistance to survivors. If sheltering is required, congregate sheltering may be
2534 suboptimal during an outbreak of infectious disease. This depends on whether the pathogen is
2535 transmissible from person to person or is only able to be transmitted from environmental source to
2536 person. If the agent is not transmissible between people, traditional congregate sheltering may be an
2537 option. If the agent is transmissible between people, alternative options such as non-congregate
2538 sheltering may be more appropriate.

2539 **4.3.1 EVACUATION AND SHELTERING**

2540 The type, scope, and scale of the incident will influence the facilities and transportation services
2541 needed to support evacuation and sheltering needs. In addition to routine disaster response

⁸² Roberts, K. (2020, December 24). *Camp Pendleton commanding general speaks to community affected by fire* [Photograph]. <https://www.dvidshub.net/image/6467367/camp-pendleton-commanding-general-speaks-community-affected-fire>

2542 planning, consider these additional questions when planning for evacuation and sheltering during a
2543 biological incident:

- 2544 ▪ With whom will you coordinate to understand public health requirements and orders for
2545 evacuees in the destination jurisdiction? Who is your contact at the public health agency?
- 2546 ▪ How will you know if there are travel restrictions in place that will limit the movement of the
2547 impacted population?
- 2548 ▪ How will you know if evacuees are required to be tested prior to arriving in another jurisdiction?
- 2549 ▪ How will you know if evacuated populations are required to quarantine or isolate?

2550 As noted above, congregate sheltering may be suboptimal during an outbreak of contagious disease.
2551 Adherence to infection control protocols such as social distancing and enhanced cleaning and
2552 disinfecting would require congregate shelters to drastically adjust their operating procedures for
2553 both staff and shelter residents. Contact tracing, decontamination, and separating those who are
2554 infected from those who are uninfected may also be necessary and would increase burdens on staff
2555 and shelter residents. Shelters may need to provide PPE to reduce the spread of infection among
2556 evacuees, and workforce shortages may occur if staff become exposed or ill themselves.

2557 As a result of these challenges, non-congregate shelters such as hotels, colleges, and universities
2558 may be more feasible for sheltering survivors during a biological incident involving a contagious
2559 disease, as they provide greater opportunity to separate individuals while providing needed mass
2560 care services. Additional subject matter expertise and surveillance/monitoring data may need to be
2561 consulted to identify areas and facilities where mass care services can be safely located. In addition,
2562 the transmissibility of the pathogen also should be considered when planning feeding operations for
2563 any type of sheltering during a biological incident.

2564 Planners should be aware that some underserved populations, such as individuals at lower socio-
2565 economic levels, non-documented residents, unhoused individuals, and persons with disabilities or
2566 limited mobility, may experience disproportionate impacts from biological incidents. These and other
2567 individuals may have limited financial reserves and their income may be disrupted in the aftermath
2568 of the incident and/or during response and recovery activities.

2569  Refer To

- 2570 ▪ FEMA [COVID-19 Pandemic Operational Guidance for the 2020 Hurricane Season](#) (2020)
2571 and [COVID-19 Pandemic Operational Guidance](#) (2021) for guidance on the safe operation
2572 of shelters during a contagious disease outbreak
- 2573 ▪ HHS CDC [Interim Guidance for General Population Disaster Shelters During the COVID-19](#)
2574 [Pandemic](#) webpage

- 2575
2576
2577
- DHS *Planning Considerations: Evacuation and Shelter-in-Place, Guidance for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Partners* (2019) for critical considerations on accommodating vulnerable populations in shelters



Coordination Opportunity

2578

2579
2580
2581
2582
2583
2584

Coordinate with community public health authorities, HCCs, and professionals such as social workers who are experienced in working with vulnerable populations to help develop plans that reflect the unique circumstances of a biological incident environment and that will meet the needs of all persons recommended to evacuate and/or shelter, including homeless persons; individuals with service animals or pets, disabilities, mobility limitations, or medical needs; children; the elderly; etc.

2585
2586
2587
2588

FEMA and the American Red Cross assembled “Pandemic Sheltering Kits” that provide protective measures such as sanitation stations, privacy walls, and gloves so that shelters can operate safely during a biological incident. Contact the American Red Cross for assistance in obtaining or building “Pandemic Sheltering Kits” to help ensure shelters operate safely.



Action Item

2589

2590
2591
2592
2593

Determine the feasibility of establishing shelters (congregate or non-congregate) and identify what services your jurisdiction will provide during a biological incident and concurrent other disaster. Establish agreements with appropriate facilities in your region to serve as shelters (e.g., hotels, colleges, universities).

2594
2595
2596
2597

Pre-designate shelters (especially non-congregate sheltering locations) and human services center location(s). If multiple, ensure all support locations are linked to facilitate communication, to share information (including tracking of patients and resources), and to maintain situational awareness.

2598
2599

- Ensure sites are made known to local hospitals, emergency medical service providers, law enforcement, and emergency relief services/partners.

2600
2601

- Coordinate with local public health and HCCs to ensure their operational plans are interfaced with the community response plans.

2602
2603

Determine safety measures for protecting against the spread of infection among evacuees within shelters and during transportation.

2604
2605

Plan for workforce and other resource needs, including shortages of staff and PPE during public health emergencies.

2606

Identify methods to coordinate service delivery that maximizes the use of a virtual workforce.

2607 **What will you need to know?**

- 2608 How will transportation services to/from shelters limit disease spread?
- 2609 What purposes will shelters fill during a biological incident and concurrent other type of
2610 disaster (e.g. hurricane, wildfire)? What are the corresponding best practices?
- 2611 Contamination/health screening?
- 2612 Decontamination?
- 2613 Limited medical evaluation and care?
- 2614 Emergency first aid?
- 2615 Temporary housing?
- 2616 Disaster welfare information?
- 2617 Food service?
- 2618 Health and mental health services?
- 2619 Ongoing health surveillance?
- 2620 What facilities in your region are available to serve as shelters during a biological incident
2621 and concurrent other disaster?
- 2622 What are their capacities?
- 2623 How will they limit disease spread?
- 2624 How will you handle a shortage of shelters or adequate space?
- 2625 How will you know if there are any staffing or resource constraints?
- 2626 How will you address workforce shortages at shelters if staff are unable to report during a
2627 biological incident?
- 2628 What accommodations will be made for individuals in need of additional response
2629 assistance?
- 2630 How will populations with disabilities, populations living in institutional settings, older
2631 populations, children, homeless populations, populations with limited English proficiency,
2632 transient populations (tourists, students, hospitality workers), populations with mobility or
2633 transportation challenges, and populations in need of crisis counseling or mental health
2634 services, among others, be accommodated?
- 2635 Which NGO, VOAD, and/or private sector partners will provide sheltering?
- 2636 What process will you use for prioritizing who will be sheltered in non-congregate shelters
2637 when such facilities are limited?
- 2638 What mental health services are available to those sheltering?

2639 4.4 Service Animals and Household Pets

2640 Household pets and service animals present complexities in managing disasters. In past disasters,
2641 pet owners have chosen not to comply with recommended evacuation if accommodations for their
2642 pets could not be guaranteed, which increased risks to life safety for evacuees, responders, and
2643 animals. To promote human safety in disaster situations, the [Pets Evacuation and Transportation](#)
2644 [Standards \(PETS\) Act of 2006](#) was passed. The PETS Act requires state and local planners to plan for
2645 the mass care of household pets and service animals during mass sheltering and evacuation
2646 operations, including provision of veterinary care.

2647 During a biological incident, household pets and service animals present even greater complexities.
2648 In addition to considerations laid out in the PETS Act, emergency managers must also consider
2649 planning scenarios in which the pathogen causing the biological incident may be transmissible from
2650 animal to person, from animal to animal, and/or from person to animal. If an infectious disease is
2651 transmissible between species, this must be taken into account when planning for all types of
2652 sheltering (congregate sheltering, non-congregate sheltering, and sheltering-in-place).

2653 Refer To

- 2654 ▪ HHS ASPR TRACIE Topic Collection: [Veterinary Issues](#) for more information on disaster-
2655 related animal health resources
- 2656 ▪ HHS CDC [Pet Safety in Emergencies](#) webpage, including dog and cat [Pet Disaster](#)
2657 [Checklists](#)
- 2658 ▪ Ready.gov [Prepare Your Pets for Disasters](#) webpage
- 2659 ▪ NASAAEP [Best Practice Working Groups webpage](#) for documents, published in conjunction
2660 with USDA, describing best practices for animal transportation, evacuation, sheltering,
2661 decontamination, and care
- 2662 ▪ NASAAEP [Animal Evacuation and Transportation Best Practices](#) (2012)
- 2663 ▪ NASAAEP [Emergency Animal Sheltering Best Practices](#) (2014)

2664 Coordination Opportunity

2665 Coordinate and establish partnerships with public health, SLTT animal health officials, and
2666 veterinarians to comprehensively plan for incidents involving animals. Collaborate with animal
2667 health professionals to determine where veterinary care should be integrated into other
2668 response activities (e.g., sheltering or decontamination) and to develop protocols to prevent
2669 the spread of infection from animals to people, between animals, and from people to animals
2670 in all settings in which disaster veterinary care will take place.

2671 Consult with USDA APHIS to obtain information related to training materials, financial
2672 resources, supplemental staffing, and technical assistance for animal needs during disasters.



Action Item

- 2673
- 2674 ▪ Ensure plans for animal evacuation, transport, shelter, decontamination, and care are
2675 comprehensive and outline operations in accordance with applicable laws.
 - 2676 ▪ Determine your jurisdiction's capacity to shelter owners and their pets together, or if
2677 owners and pets would need to be sheltered separately.
 - 2678 ▪ Develop infection prevention and control strategies for any sheltering situation housing
2679 pets and service animals alongside people during a biological incident.

What will you need to know?

- 2680
- 2681 How many pets and service animals reside within your jurisdiction?
 - 2682 What protective actions will your jurisdiction take for responders and the public when
2683 providing mass care to humans and animals during a zoonotic incident?

2684 4.5 Community Reception Centers

2685 When the incident is the result of a biological attack or accident at a particular site, there may be a
2686 need to set up one or more Community Reception Centers (CRCs) to address the mass care needs of
2687 incident survivors and their family members, as well as the community at large, and to act as hubs
2688 for information sharing. In such instances, establishing a CRC(s) as soon as possible during the
2689 incident is critical to meeting the needs of survivors and their families quickly. As with any intentional
2690 incident, planners should be aware that places which hold mass gatherings following the incident
2691 may become targets for a secondary attack, including hospitals and reception centers.

2692 Depending on the biological agent involved in the incident, CRC operations may need to be modified
2693 with various infection prevention and control measures as discussed earlier in this section for
2694 evacuation and sheltering. When the biological agent is communicable, CRCs are most likely to
2695 become virtual through call centers or hotlines to reduce the threat to those providing services as
2696 well as reduce the spread. While feeding operations would typically occur at CRCs, the
2697 transmissibility of the biological agent should be considered prior to initiating feeding operations at
2698 CRCs after an intentional attack or accidental release.



2699

2700

Figure 33: Community reception centers handling care needs

2701



Refer To

2702
2703

- HHS ASPR TRACIE *Tips for Healthcare Facilities: Assisting Families and Loved Ones after a Mass Casualty Incident*

2704
2705
2706

- FBI-National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) *Mass Fatality Incident Family Assistance Operations: Recommended Strategies for Local and State Agencies* (2013) for information about different types of reception centers and considerations for their establishment

2707



Coordination Opportunity

2708
2709
2710
2711
2712

Establish relationships with local and regional mass care and human services providers to build familiarity with available services and to help ensure integrated operations during a disaster. Discuss operational adjustments to the provision of basic needs in all-hazards disasters that may be necessary in a biological incident. Establish mechanisms to ensure mass care and human services are efficiently and effectively supplied.

2713



Action Item

2714
2715
2716
2717
2718

- See Action Items above for evacuation and sheltering. Many also apply to CRCs.
- Develop plans for the rapid establishment of call centers to meet immediate needs of survivors and their families following a large, outdoor attack or accidental release.
- Establish plans for protecting survivors and responders from a secondary attack at places that hold large crowds or other areas of concern in the event of an intentional incident.

2719

What will you need to know?

2720
2721

- See What will you need to know? section above for evacuation and sheltering. Many also apply to CRCs.

- 2722 What are the reunification plans of daycare centers, schools, businesses, and other
2723 organizations in your area?

2724 4.6 Decontamination Support

2725 For biological incidents linked to a discrete location, decontamination of all affected individuals at
2726 the primary incident location may not be possible even when warranted. (For additional discussion,
2727 see KPF 3, Control the Spread of Disease.) Decontamination facilities may not be readily available
2728 during the early stages of self-directed population evacuations, and as a result, contaminated
2729 individuals may leave the contaminated zone and seek entry to mass care facilities such as shelters
2730 and CRCs. As a result, such facilities may require capabilities for both health screening and
2731 decontamination to accommodate those who were not decontaminated at the primary incident
2732 location or another location prior to transport to the mass care site, and to prevent contaminated
2733 persons from spreading infection to others.

2734 A coordinated approach to decontamination and infection control procedures should be determined
2735 by incident command, public health officials, and SMEs, and should be communicated to the public
2736 and to all mass care facilities. Such coordination is essential to maintaining calm in survivors and
2737 reducing the number of additional people seeking medical care, which could otherwise strain
2738 available resources and complicate public messaging. Public communications should clearly
2739 describe recommended actions for those leaving an incident site with potential exposure, those
2740 sheltering-in-place, and those displaced. Such recommendations may include procedures for self-
2741 decontamination and containment of potentially contaminated clothing or personal items. Animal
2742 health officials should contribute to public communications on recommended actions for household
2743 pets and service animals that may have been exposed and provide additional details on available
2744 veterinary care.



2745

2746

Figure 34: First responders performing animal decontamination⁸³

⁸³ (Left) (n.d.) Cow [Photograph]. animaldecon.com; (right) n.d.) Horse Decon [Photograph]. animaldecon.com

2747



Coordination Opportunity

2748
2749

Work with local public health officials, HCCs, and HAZMAT teams to understand capacity for decontamination support.

2750
2751
2752
2753

Coordinate and establish partnerships with animal health officials and veterinarians who have expertise and experience in handling animals and conducting animal decontamination. Establish mutual aid agreements with nearby jurisdictions for the provision of animal decontamination resources.

2754



Action Item

2755
2756

- Establish plans and potential locations for decontamination activities near or collocated with shelter locations.

2757
2758
2759

- Emergency management planners should draft decontamination plans in coordination with planners from public health and HCCs to increase the likelihood of being practical and effective.

2760

What will you need to know?

2761
2762
2763

- Who can provide decontamination support and where will decontamination occur?
- Where will decontamination waste and contaminated items be collected, moved, or stored until proper disposal?

2764



What would you do?

2765
2766

...if the occupants of a city block need to be decontaminated and evacuated?

...if a family and their dog arrive at a CRC but have not been decontaminated yet?

2767 4.7 Public Fear and Mental Health Impacts

2768
2769
2770
2771
2772
2773
2774
2775

Biological incidents can leave a unique psychological footprint on affected populations because they often occur without warning, may produce unfamiliar or unknown short- and long-term health effects, and can result in long-term threats and long-duration recovery for the community at large. Questions about related health effects such as delayed onset of symptoms or long-term health impacts, including effects on immunocompromised persons, pregnant women, older adults, and children, will be at the forefront of community concerns. Unlike natural disasters, when neighboring jurisdictions and affected communities often come together to respond and recover, outsiders may be less willing to provide response assistance after a biological incident due to fear of infection. This could

2776 potentially increase the mental health burden on an affected community following a biological
2777 incident compared to other, non-biological incidents. Psychological health impacts due to biological
2778 agent exposure can also extend far beyond the geographical area in which the actual physical
2779 exposure occurs.

2780 “Amerithrax,” as the 2001 anthrax attacks came to be known, elicited widespread fear and
2781 panic as multiple anthrax-laced letters arrived at congressional offices and media outlets, killing
2782 five and sickening seventeen.^{84,85}



2783

Figure 35: Counseling services can support calming fear and anxiety for communities impacted by a biological incident⁸⁶

2784
2785

2786 Feelings of anxiety following a biological outbreak or attack may be directly related to a lack of
2787 familiarity with the pathogen and confusion regarding information provided by officials and media
2788 outlets. News stories and images of worst-case scenarios may increase the public’s perceived risk
2789 compared to actual risk and may give the impression that everyone requires medical attention.
2790 Intentional attacks may cause heightened fear and anxiety due to feelings of vulnerability and the
2791 possibility of a secondary attack. Whether an attack is announced or unannounced (e.g., time passes
2792 before it is known that an attack has occurred), mass hysteria may ensue due to fear of exposure
2793 and the unknown. Promptly addressing these fears by communicating timely and accurate
2794 information in coordination with local public health authorities is a high-priority action that requires
2795 planning. Individuals will feel more empowered to make decisions that protect themselves, their

⁸⁴ Ursano, R.J. (Ed.). (2002). *Responding to Bioterrorism: Individual and Community Needs*. Center for the Study of Traumatic Stress, Department of Psychiatry, Uniformed Services University of the Health Sciences. <https://apps.dtic.mil/sti/pdfs/ADA406540.pdf>

⁸⁵ Guillemin, J. (2011). *American Anthrax: Fear, Crime, and the Investigation of the Nation’s Deadliest Bioterror Attack*. Holt & Company.

⁸⁶ Mint_Images (n.d.). [Photograph]. <https://elements.envato.com/woman-and-female-therapist-in-face-masks-at-a-ther-SKBB89P>

2796 loved ones, and their communities when they are given clear, factual, and frequently updated
2797 information about the incident. (Refer to KPF 2, Communicate with External Partners and the Public
2798 for information about effective communication during a biological incident.)

2799 Services such as debriefing, counseling, or support groups facilitated by behavioral health
2800 professionals—particularly for those who have lost loved ones or find themselves in financial distress
2801 due to the incident—may lessen the negative toll taken on impacted individuals. SLTT officials should
2802 plan to support accessible services for all vulnerable populations (including those facing financial
2803 hardship); these services can be facilitated by establishing partnerships with community
2804 organizations. Local NGOs and VOADs may be willing to offer services such as counseling to those
2805 impacted by the disaster for free or at discounted rates, offer programs which assist in transporting
2806 homebound individuals to appointments, or offer virtual support programs to those who are unable
2807 to or do not wish to attend appointments in person.

2808 Behavioral health issues may be significant and could overwhelm existing counseling
2809 professionals and facilities, especially since biological incidents will call for less traditional
2810 methods of delivering psychological support such as virtual visits.



Coordination Opportunity

2811

2812 Build relationships with mental health partners, public health officials, private and public
2813 medical providers, community stakeholders, academic institutions, and school officials.
2814 Together, establish the role of partners in mental health services during an emergency and
2815 develop agreements for the provision of mental health staff, including medical and psychology
2816 students, following an incident. Pre-identify mental and behavioral health services that can be
2817 offered to disaster survivors and establish contracts to ensure that these services will be
2818 available following an incident.



Refer To

2819

2820 Department of Veterans Affairs *Disaster Mental Health Services: A Guidebook for Clinicians*
2821 *and Administrators* for more information on the types of mental health services that can
2822 benefit impacted communities, recommended timelines for offering specific services after or
2823 during incidents, and the many government and community-based organizations that are
2824 available to assist in providing disaster-related mental health services

2825



Action Item

2826
2827

- Establish a disaster mental health preparedness working group to develop community objectives for disaster mental health services and procedures for emergency response.

2828
2829

- Ensure these objectives are incorporated into the community's overall disaster plans and address the needs of survivors, responders, and the community.

2830
2831
2832

- Establish links and referral mechanisms between mental health specialists, general healthcare providers, community-based support groups, and other services (e.g., schools and emergency relief services such as those providing food, water, and housing/shelter).

2833

What Will You Need to Know?

2834

- What mental health services are available in your jurisdiction for those impacted?

2835

4.8 Federal Assistance for Mass Care and Human Services

2836
2837
2838
2839
2840
2841
2842
2843
2844
2845
2846
2847
2848

During a multi-state or catastrophic biological incident, or in the case of biological incidents requiring specialized, limited availability MCMs, there most likely will be shortages of critical resources. Needs may rapidly exceed the capabilities of SLTT departments, agencies, and NGOs in affected and nearby jurisdictions. Mitigation measures intended to slow the spread of disease may dramatically increase the strain placed on critical infrastructure, particularly regarding critical medical and non-medical supply chains. Additionally, sudden, widespread, incident-caused loss of employment may place unprecedented strain on social services programs. Disease burden, income loss, economic hardship, disruptions to the food supply chain, and necessary mitigation measures such as social distancing and the closure of schools, may stress or otherwise undermine both community and individual resiliency. Unanticipated consumer demand, limited domestic production, and disrupted supply chains may lead to substantial cascading impacts that further destabilize national, regional, and/or local supply chains and may not be mitigated or overcome by either state/local governments or the private sector.



2849

2850

Figure 36: Interruptions can impact critical infrastructure personnel and supply chains

2851 When federal support is requested during a disaster response, ESF #6, Mass Care, Emergency
2852 Assistance, Housing, and Human Services provides a framework for delivering mass care. Within this
2853 framework, services and programs implemented to assist individuals impacted by potential or actual
2854 disasters are organized into four primary functions: mass care, emergency assistance, housing, and
2855 human services. Additional federal support activities are directed by ESF #8 – Public Health and
2856 Medical Services (coordinated by HHS), ESF #10 – Oil and Hazardous Materials Response
2857 (coordinated by EPA), and ESF #11 – Agriculture and Natural Resources (coordinated by USDA).

2858 As part of ESF #11, the USDA FNS identifies, secures, and arranges for the transportation of food
2859 and/or the provision of nutritional assistance to affected areas and supports FEMA Mass Care in
2860 providing food for shelters and other mass feeding sites. These efforts include the activation of
2861 programs such as The Emergency Food Assistance Program; Commodity Supplemental Food
2862 Program; National School Lunch Program; Summer Food Service Program; Seamless Summer
2863 Option; Supplemental Nutrition Assistance Program; Pandemic Electronic Benefit Transfer; Women,
2864 Infants and Children Program; Senior Nutrition Program; Home-Delivered Nutrition Services; and
2865 Child and Adult Care Food Program.

2866 When jurisdictional sources of support have been exhausted, SLTT officials should escalate requests
2867 for assistance. FEMA will coordinate logistics across federal resources to support SLTT, NGOs, and
2868 VOADs in performance of mass care, emergency assistance, housing, and human services missions.



Refer To

- 2869
- 2870 ▪ DHS National Response Framework (NRF), Emergency Support Function #6: Mass Care,
2871 Emergency Assistance, Housing, and Human Services (2008)
 - 2872 ▪ FEMA Mass Evacuation Incident Annex (2008)
 - 2873 ▪ DHS National Disaster Recovery Framework (NDRF), Health and Social Services Recovery
2874 Support Function (2011) highlights the importance of responding to incidents at the most
2875 local level possible and can bolster the self-sufficiency of impacted communities as they
2876 work toward maintaining their population’s health and well-being.
 - 2877 ▪ DHS Planning Considerations: Evacuation and Shelter-in-Place, Guidance for State, Local,
2878 Tribal, and Territorial Partners (2019)
 - 2879 ▪ FEMA Post-Disaster Reunification of Children: A Nationwide Approach (2013)
 - 2880 ▪ FEMA Individual Assistance Program and Policy Guide (2019)
 - 2881 ▪ FEMA Mass Care/Emergency Assistance Pandemic Planning Considerations (2020)
 - 2882 ▪ FEMA COVID-19 Pandemic Operational Guidance for the 2020 Hurricane Season (2020),
2883 Appendix C provides planners with a checklist of factors to consider when developing plans
2884 to restore services under each of the community lifelines during a pandemic. While not all
2885 biological incidents are pandemics, many of the considerations listed in the checklist are
2886 broadly applicable to biological incidents.

- 2887
2888
2889
- HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health (2018)*, specifically Capability 7 – Mass Care and Capability 15 – Volunteer Management.



Coordination Opportunity

2890

2891
2892
2893
2894
2895
2896

Coordinate with federal entities, surrounding jurisdictions, NGOs, VOADs, faith-based organizations, and private sector entities to ensure that your jurisdiction has access to the resources necessary for providing mass care services during a biological incident. Jurisdictions should develop relationships with the private sector that can be leveraged during an incident. The local market economy and supply chain should be empowered and reinforced, rather than replaced or forced into competition with external resources.



Action Item

2897

- 2898
2899
2900
2901
- Identify supply chain vulnerabilities and dependencies that could impact sheltering, feeding, etc.
 - During an incident, coordinate with NGOs and/or VOADs to distribute available resources to your community.

What Will You Need to Know?

2902

- 2903
2904
2905
2906
2907
- How will assistance from voluntary agencies and organizations be coordinated?
 - Do the agencies/organizations have specific policies regarding assistance during a biological incident?
 - How will you gather and synthesize information in order to continue evaluating requirements for medical and behavioral health services to affected populations?

2908 **KPF 5: Augment Provision of Health and Medical Services**
2909 **to the Affected Population**

2910 A wide range of public health and medical services – including clinical care, patient movement,
2911 medical supply chain logistics, and fatality management – may be needed during the response
2912 to and recovery from a biological incident. Due to the size, scope, and/or complexity of a
2913 biological incident, these needs may overwhelm existing state and local capabilities and
2914 resources, causing significant strain across impacted communities. Limited availability of
2915 supplies, space, and personnel during response and recovery should be anticipated during a
2916 biological incident. KPF 5 will help planners consider resources needed to provide health and
2917 medical services during a biological incident to minimize morbidity and mortality and support
2918 stabilization of the Health and Medical Lifeline.

2919 **5.1 Medical Care Considerations**

2920 Most biological incidents will develop slowly, providing time for public health officials to identify the
2921 causative biological agent, corresponding MCM that will help prevent or treat illness (if available),
2922 and affected communities to receive MCMs (e.g., antibiotics, antivirals, etc.). While slowly developing
2923 biological incidents allow time to prepare, they may still significantly impact health and medical
2924 services depending on their scale and length. Rapidly developing biological incidents (e.g.,
2925 intentional release of a biological agent) are rare, and these incidents present different challenges to
2926 health and medical services related to acute care capacity, immediate MCM availability, and other
2927 necessary resources.



2928
2929 **Figure 37: Healthcare workers treating COVID-19 patients**

2930 **Hurdles Facing Health and Medical Services**

2931 The provision of health and medical services to the affected population following a biological
2932 incident faces several hurdles, including, but not limited to:

- 2933 ▪ First responders and healthcare personnel may have to provide medical care without
2934 knowing the identity of the biological agent and are likely to be at increased risk of exposure.
2935 They may be asked to conserve scarce resources including PPE or to modify care and
2936 treatment depending on the nature of the incident.
- 2937 ▪ The lack of pathogen-specific MCMs (e.g., vaccines, therapeutic drugs, diagnostic tests, etc.)
2938 for the biological agent may lead to high morbidity and mortality.
- 2939 ▪ Local healthcare and public health infrastructure can be overwhelmed by the sheer number
2940 of individuals seeking care in a short period of time and may be ill-equipped and ill-prepared
2941 to handle mass casualty events.
- 2942 ▪ An overwhelming volume of patients, most of which are likely to be minimally exposed,
2943 seeking medical care with no quickly discernable way (e.g., diagnostic test) to determine
2944 actual exposure and predict who will become ill presents challenges to effective treatment.
- 2945 ▪ Exposed or contaminated patients may pose hazards to prehospital personnel, as well as
2946 healthcare providers and other patients in a hospital emergency department setting.
- 2947 ▪ Hospitals may be unprepared to implement patient decontamination in the instance of an
2948 “announced” attack, including for self-presenting individuals with unknown contamination
2949 status. (Refer to KPF 3, Control the Spread of Disease, for more information on
2950 decontamination.)

2951 Several characteristics of a biological incident may amplify the demand for medical and health
2952 resources: public concern over exposure, potential for initial signs and symptoms to be similar to
2953 those seen with common infectious diseases (e.g., cough and runny nose with common cold, fever
2954 and sore throat with strep throat), and lack of definitive knowledge about the boundaries of the
2955 affected geographical area. By providing clear, concise, and timely information to the public, public
2956 health and emergency management officials may help reduce those presenting unnecessarily for
2957 medical care (Refer to KPF 2, Communicate with External Partners and the Public).

2958 Ultimately, once the pathogen and/or source have been identified, this information can guide
2959 medical treatment to ensure the best health outcomes. Medical care should also include behavioral
2960 healthcare, as biological incidents have the potential to increase stress and fear, especially if
2961 intentional and transmissible. (Refer to KPF 4, Augment Provision of Mass Care and Human Services
2962 to the Affected Population for more information surrounding behavioral health resources.)

2963 Provision of available treatment should occur without disruption of baseline medical services. The
2964 affected community will need reliable access to medications and care for conditions and injuries
2965 unrelated to the biological incident. Emergency managers can provide logistical support for health
2966 and medical services through early coordination and frequent communication with public health

2967 officials and HCCs during biological incidents. For example, emergency management planners
2968 should work with public health and healthcare planners to incorporate considerations regarding the
2969 needs of diabetic patients, patients on dialysis, patients receiving antiretroviral therapy, transplant
2970 patients, individuals receiving addiction treatments, and other special patient populations into their
2971 respective plans.

2972 **5.2 Medical Countermeasures Use in Healthcare Facilities**

2973 SLTT entities may lack the capability to immediately provide sufficient care and MCMs in the
2974 aftermath of a biological incident. MCM distribution may be challenging due to limited availability,
2975 overwhelming demand, and requests beyond impacted areas. Available MCMs should be prioritized
2976 for healthcare facilities. Closed PODs may be necessary to set up within hospitals to provide patients
2977 and staff with MCMs, where appropriate. If closed PODs are established to provide healthcare
2978 personnel with MCMs, the public should be informed not to go to hospitals for MCMs unless
2979 specifically instructed to do so due to the potential to overwhelm hospital systems.

2980 Over time, individuals receiving MCMs (or having received them in the past) may perceive to be
2981 experiencing adverse effects associated with treatment. While there is not necessarily an increased
2982 risk of adverse effects from MCMs compared to that of any medical treatment, all persons
2983 concerned about possible adverse effects resulting from MCM administration should seek medical
2984 attention and follow up with their healthcare provider to fully investigate their concerns. Medical care
2985 related to addressing adverse effects from MCMs is supported by the Public Health Readiness and
2986 Emergency Preparedness Act (PREP) Act.

2987 **5.3 Healthcare Resilience**

2988 Depending upon the size, severity, and duration of the incident and the robustness of local
2989 healthcare and public health infrastructure, SLTT capacity to provide appropriate care and services
2990 in response to a biological incident can be quickly overwhelmed. Plans should be made in
2991 coordination with public health officials and HCCs for monitoring the capacity of emergency
2992 departments and hospitals as well as the continued availability of medical supplies. Healthcare
2993 capacity to adapt to the overwhelming need depends on the implementation of triage of available
2994 hospital beds, patients, and EMS; load-balancing through use of alternate care sites (ACS) or
2995 hospitals that were not impacted; and other forms of care adaptation, such as modified care
2996 standards or the use of non-traditional locations to provide needed services.

2997 Biological incidents may lead to the triage or prioritization of available hospital beds, including critical
2998 care space and capacity. To ensure the right resources make it to those most in need, triage of
2999 patients will be critical with no-notice biological incidents and also may be required for naturally
3000 occurring disease events when they are communicable and have had time to spread throughout the
3001 population. Prioritization of patients and use of triage may occur within a hospital when resources
3002 are overwhelmed. While triage decisions may be made within hospitals and healthcare systems for
3003 patients and hospital beds, HCCs can facilitate coordination of these resources to help prevent the
3004 need for triage. EMS may also implement triage procedures regarding issues such as who responds

3005 to emergency calls, which patients are transported, and where patients are transported (e.g., to a
3006 Federal Medical Station [FMS] or ACS instead of hospital). EMS triage decisions and alteration of
3007 standards will be made in coordination with HCCs and local authorities.



3008

3009

Figure 38: Additional hospital space during COVID-19⁸⁷

3010 The activation of pre-existing mutual-aid agreements with neighboring jurisdictions can help relieve
3011 pressure on local medical facilities. If the biological incident also extends into jurisdictions with which
3012 agreements have been established, resource challenges are more likely to persist. HCCs or Medical
3013 Operations Coordination Cells may initiate load-balancing in a region if a hospital or system is
3014 overwhelmed. Load-balancing may involve prehospital distribution of patients among area
3015 healthcare facilities, transferring patients from overwhelmed healthcare facilities to ones with more
3016 capacity (space, staffing, and equipment), or moving resources to support an overwhelmed facility.
3017 When put into place, triage and care adaptations should be openly communicated to the community.

3018

3019

Planners should consider how logistics assistance may mitigate the need to implement triage or care adaptations.

3020 Healthcare and public health infrastructure resilience may be unavoidably impacted by supply chain
3021 disruptions resulting in limited availability of PPE and other critical resources. Insufficient PPE may
3022 lead to reuse of equipment designed for single use and increased exposure (and anxiety for potential
3023 exposure) among first responders and healthcare personnel. Supply chain disruptions may also lead
3024 to increased cost of PPE, as seen during the COVID-19 pandemic. While mutual-aid agreements may

⁸⁷ Shutterstock. (n.d.). *Construction site of tents for overflow capacity for hospitals* [Photograph].
<https://news.weill.cornell.edu/news/2020/10/in-brief-comprehensive-review-identifies-six-hospital-capacity-planning-models-for>

3025 allow for transfer of PPE during a local or regional incident as discussed above, these agreements
3026 may be of little assistance if supply chains are disrupted nationally or internationally.

3027 **Challenges and Changes in Healthcare during the COVID-19 Pandemic**

3028 For much of 2020, normal medical care was constrained as facility space, staff, and resources
3029 (e.g., medical equipment, PPE) were in high demand due to the COVID-19 pandemic. The
3030 situation was further complicated in several jurisdictions facing concurrent disasters including
3031 hurricanes, wildfires, regional-scale flooding, civil unrest, etc. Care adaptation and triage
3032 occurred during the COVID-19 pandemic in the U.S., as EMS transported patients to non-acute
3033 care hospitals and ACS,⁸⁸ EMS modified protocols for care related to cardiac arrest,⁸⁹ hospitals
3034 adapted care based on available resources,⁹⁰ and state licensing requirements were
3035 altered/waived in order to accept out-of-state healthcare workers.⁹¹



3036 **Coordination Opportunity**

3037 Coordinate with hospitals and HCCs to:

- 3038 ■ Ensure procedures exist for patient triage, load-balancing, and care adaptation for
3039 biological incident response.
- 3040 ■ Facilitate mutual aid agreements for biologic products, drugs, and devices. Such
3041 agreements are often supported by HCCs funded via HHS ASPR Hospital Preparedness
3042 Program (HPP) grants.
- 3043 ■ Coordinate with public health officials and HCCs to provide logistical support for supply
3044 chains to help ensure the availability of PPE and other critical resources and mitigate the
3045 implementation of care adaptations.

⁸⁸ Duncan, Dave. (2020, March 7). *Policy to implement the emergency proclamation of the governor on the use of alternate destination*. Emergency Medical Services Authority. <https://emsa.ca.gov/wp-content/uploads/sites/71/2020/03/Policy-on-COVID-19-and-AD-3-7-20.pdf>

⁸⁹Gausche-Hill. (2021, January 4). *Revised: EMS transport of patients in the traumatic and nontraumatic cardiac arrest*. Emergency Medical Services Agency. http://file.lacounty.gov/SDSInter/dhs/1100458_Directive_6revTransportofTraumaticandNontraumaticCardiacArrest.pdf

⁹⁰ Idaho Department of Health and Welfare. *Crisis Standards of Care*. <https://healthandwelfare.idaho.gov/crisis-standards-care>

⁹¹ Office of the Texas Governor. (2020, March 14). *Governor Abbott Fast-Tracks Licensing For Out-Of-State Medical Professionals*. <https://gov.texas.gov/news/post/governor-abbott-fast-tracks-licensing-for-out-of-state-medical-professionals>



Action Item

3046

3047 Planners should work with hospitals and HCCs to develop strategies for guiding the movement
3048 of resources and patients following a biological agent release or infectious disease outbreak to
3049 ensure medical needs are safely met. Efforts should include:

- 3050 ▪ Determining requirements for, and sources of, the health and medical services resources
3051 needed
- 3052 ▪ Developing protocols and procedures for timely communication with supporting and
3053 receiving agencies to maintain situational awareness of healthcare infrastructure and
3054 service status
- 3055 ▪ Developing messaging strategies that can effectively direct pre-arrival patient movement to
3056 hospitals that have needed resources or are not overwhelmed
- 3057 ▪ Developing jurisdiction-wide healthcare provision strategies that can accommodate large
3058 numbers of patients while implementing decontamination procedures

3059 Establish pre-incident MOUs/MOAs for resource sharing.

3060 Review state, regional, and local plans for augmenting the provision of health and medical
3061 services, including Emergency Management Assistance Compacts (EMACs).

3062 Consider ways to ensure priority care needs are met and access to pharmaceuticals continues.

3063 Anticipate and develop workarounds for potential medical supply chain disruptions, including
3064 alternative contract arrangements, as appropriate.



Refer To

3065

- 3066 ▪ [EMAC](#), a compact for state-to-state personnel, equipment, supply, and other assistance.

3067 HHS ASPR TRACIE resources:

- 3068 ▪ [EMS Infectious Disease Playbook \(2017\)](#) for information on infection control for EMS
3069 personnel.
- 3070 ▪ [Medical Operations Coordination Cells Toolkit \(2021\)](#) for more information on SLTT load-
3071 balancing across healthcare facilities and systems.
- 3072 ▪ Topic Collection: [Alternate Care Sites \(including shelter medical care\)](#) and [COVID-19](#)
3073 [Alternate Care Site Resources](#) for more information on ACS resources.

What will you need to know?

- 3075 Where are the hospitals and clinics in your region? What are their specialties/capabilities,
3076 number of beds, intensive care unit capacity, and number of ventilators and respirators?

- 3077 What are the locations and capabilities of SLTT public health resources?
- 3078 Does your jurisdiction have an existing HCC? What role does emergency management serve
- 3079 to support their collaborative work?
- 3080 How will surge and/or care adaptations be addressed at hospitals and healthcare facilities?
- 3081
 - What stakeholders should be engaged for discussion around need for care adaptations as
 - 3082 well as specific adaptations?
 - 3083
 - How will this be communicated to the community?
- 3084 What are the likely types of supply chain disruptions that you might expect to see in larger-
- 3085 scale scenarios?
- 3086 How will medical resources be prioritized? How will this be communicated to the community?
- 3087 How will you manage the asymptomatic, possibly exposed populations?
- 3088 What are the pertinent MOUs and MOAs (for medical care, lab services, etc.)?
- 3089 How will you know the impact (and projected impact) on the workforce – first responders,
- 3090 emergency management, hospitals, clinics, laboratories, other medical and public health
- 3091 professionals?
- 3092
 - What workforce and logistical considerations will be necessary to work around the workforce
 - 3093 impacts?

3094 5.4 Veterinary Care

3095 Many pathogens capable of causing a biological incident among people are unlikely to harm
3096 companion animals. However, some biological agents may cause disease across species. During
3097 biological incidents involving zoonotic diseases, healthcare resilience may require addressing
3098 veterinary medical support, including triage and treatment. Household pets and service animals may
3099 require veterinary care to alleviate and reduce adverse health outcomes. Veterinary care is also
3100 discussed in [KPF 3, Control the Spread of Disease](#), and [KPF 4, Augment Provision of Mass Care and](#)
3101 [Human Services to the Affected Population](#).



3102 Coordination Opportunity

3103 Collaborate with community veterinary partners and SLTT animal health officials to generate
3104 updated guidance and flexible plans that ensure continuity of care and help mitigate potential
3105 medical supply chain disruptions. Work to ensure all aspects of plans can be effectively
3106 executed in a pandemic or other high medical need environment.

3107



Refer To

3108
3109

- HHS ASPR TRACIE Topic Collection: [Veterinary Issues](#) for more information on disaster-related animal health resources

3110

- NASAAEP [Disaster Veterinary Care: Best Practices](#) (2012)

3111
3112
3113

- For issues related to livestock and poultry, refer to DHS [National Food and Agriculture Incident Annex to the Response and Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plans](#) (FAIA; FIOPs) (2019)

3114 **5.5 Fatality Management**

3115 Fatality management within the broader context of biological incident planning varies across SLTT
3116 jurisdictions. Three of the biggest challenges facing fatality management during a biological incident
3117 are: (1) human and animal remains may be contaminated; (2) fatalities represent critical pieces of
3118 evidence in a law enforcement or safety investigation if the incident is suspected to be intentional;
3119 and (3) local morgues, refrigeration capability, funeral homes, and cremation facilities may be
3120 overwhelmed. Therefore, fatality management protocols should be adaptable to the specifics of the
3121 biological incident. Such protocols should consider approaches for handling and recovery,
3122 identification and tracking, transportation and storage, embalming and cremation throughput, and
3123 disposal of remains.⁹² Temporary holding of fatalities at the scene may be required depending on
3124 size and scope of the biological incident.⁹³ For example, refrigerated mortuary trailers were used
3125 during the COVID-19 pandemic when hospital morgues became overrun. Additional morgue staff
3126 (i.e., embalmers, funeral directors, processors) may be needed to increase throughput at funeral
3127 homes and crematoriums.

⁹² U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (n.d.). *Public Health Preparedness Capabilities: National Standards for State and Local Planning Capability 5: Fatality Management*. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). https://www.cdc.gov/cpr/readiness/00_docs/capability5.pdf

⁹³ National Association of Medical Examiners. (2010). *Standard Operation Procedures for Mass Fatality Management*. <https://www.thename.org/assets/docs/31434c24-8be0-4d2c-942a-8afde79ec1e7.pdf>



3128

3129

Figure 39: Mobile morgues deployed in New York City

3130

SLTT planners should establish mass fatality thresholds for requiring and requesting additional support. The federal government has the ability to provide technical assistance and consultation on fatality management and mortuary affairs (discussed below).

3131

3132

3133



What would you do?

3134

...with human or animal remains that are possibly hazardous and/or are evidence?

3135



Coordination Opportunity

3136

Medical examiners, coroners, embalmers, federal support teams (Disaster Mortuary Operational Response Teams [DMORTs]), etc. should develop mutual aid agreements across jurisdictional boundaries that can be called upon to help coordinate fatality management needs.

3137

3138

3139

3140



Action Item

3141

- Coordinate with jurisdictional medical examiners, coroners, and embalmers to determine requirements for and available resources for Fatality Management Services across a range of potential scenarios. Determine how emergency management and public health officials can support these functions.

3142

3143

3144

3145

- Exercise fatality management plans. Consider use of HHS ASPR [*Coronavirus Disease 2019 Fatality Management Tabletop Exercise Situation Manual*](#) (2020) for a tabletop exercise to test plans.

3146

3147

3148



Refer To

- 3149 ▪ HHS ASPR TRACIE Topic Collection: [Fatality Management](#) for more information on available
3150 resources
- 3151 ▪ U.S. Army Research Development and Engineering Command and the DOJ [Capstone](#)
3152 [Document: Mass Fatality Management for Incidents Involving Weapons of Mass](#)
3153 [Destruction](#) (2005) for information on managing biologically contaminated remains
- 3154 ▪ FEMA EMI [Mass Fatalities Incident Response Course \(G0386\)](#) for mass fatality
3155 management planning and operations to assess a jurisdiction's preparedness level
- 3156 ▪ FEMA CDP [Healthcare Facility Mass Fatality Management Course \(HCV13 AWR-934-V13\)](#)
3157 for mass fatality management planning and preparedness considerations in a healthcare
3158 facility
- 3159 ▪ Center for Rural Development's [Mass Fatalities Planning and Response for Rural](#)
3160 [Communities Course \(AWR-232\)](#) for rural and tribal planning considerations for an
3161 awareness level review of mass fatality response

3162

What will you need to know?

- 3163 Who has the authority at the local and state level over fatality management - medical
3164 examiner, justice of the peace, other?
- 3165 ▪ What are their biological response plans?
- 3166 Based on the biological pathogen, what will be the fatality management protocol?
- 3167 ▪ For hazardous remains?
- 3168 ▪ For evidence?
- 3169 ▪ For cultural or religious considerations?
- 3170 How will you know if there are any workforce or resource limitations for fatality management?
- 3171 ▪ If limitations arise, what will be the recommended alternatives?

3172 5.6 Federal Assistance for Health and Medical Services

3173 When needed, the federal government may be able to augment SLTT health and medical service
3174 needs. HHS coordinates the federal emergency public health and medical response via [ESF #8 –](#)
3175 [Public Health and Medical Services](#), which supports medical response assistance for behavioral
3176 health needs, survivors and response workers, and veterinary health issues. Federal assistance can
3177 support health and medical services in three major ways: by providing more supplies, increased
3178 space and expanded care facilities, or personnel assistance.

3179 **5.6.1 SUPPLIES, SPACE, AND PERSONNEL ASSISTANCE**

3180 **Supplies**

3181 During biological incidents of national concern, the federal government may augment MCM supply
3182 and logistics. When needed, these materials may be provided by the federal government through the
3183 SNS or through state-validated requests under Stafford Act protocols, if a President approves or
3184 makes an emergency or major disaster declaration for the incident. However, if the scale of an
3185 incident becomes regional or national, local officials' access to response resources, including the
3186 SNS, may be inhibited due to federal and state prioritization of needs. Additional SNS information
3187 can be found in KPF 3 – Control the Spread of Disease.

3188 When demand outpaces supply and there is a critical need, the Defense Production Act (DPA)
3189 serves as the source of presidential authority to expand the supply of materials and services
3190 from the U.S. industrial base and expedite delivery to promote national defense. During the
3191 COVID-19 pandemic, the DPA was invoked to increase production capacity of critically needed
3192 PPE and vaccine supplies to reduce the number of cases and fatalities.

3193 **Space**

3194 Overwhelmed healthcare systems may require SLTT emergency management assistance for the
3195 expansion of space and facilities to support stabilization of the Health and Medical Lifeline. Space
3196 and facilities assistance from the SNS through FMSs will also be considered upon request.⁹⁴ These
3197 rapidly deployable caches contain beds, supplies, and medicines that can quickly transform any
3198 large building into a temporary medical shelter during an emergency.

3199 **Personnel**

3200 Biological incidents may require personnel support for SLTT healthcare infrastructure due to exposed
3201 or ill staff being unable to work, fear of exposure among staff, patient volume, or other factors.
3202 Several departments and agencies provide federal personnel support for healthcare infrastructure.
3203 The National Disaster Medical System (NDMS) is a federally coordinated healthcare system and
3204 partnership of HHS, DHS, DoD, and the Department of Veterans Affairs that is designed to support
3205 SLTT authorities following disasters and emergencies by supplementing health and medical systems
3206 and response capabilities.

⁹⁴ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (2021, May 14). *Medical Assistance*. Public Health Emergency, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR). <https://www.phe.gov/Preparedness/support/medicalassistance/Pages/default.aspx>

- 3207 **National Disaster Medical System (NDMS)**
- 3208 Specifically, the NDMS can support patient care and movement, veterinary services, and fatality
- 3209 management support to requesting SLTT authorities or other federal departments via specialized
- 3210 teams that can be deployed in 12-48 hours (see below):^{95,96}
- 3211 ▪ Disaster Medical Assistance Teams (DMATs)
 - 3212 ▪ Trauma and Critical Care Teams (TCCTs)
 - 3213 ▪ Disaster Mortuary Operational Response Teams (DMORTs)
 - 3214 ▪ Victim Information Center Teams (VICs)
 - 3215 ▪ National Veterinary Response Teams (NVRTs)
 - 3216 ▪ National Medical Response Teams (NMRTs)
- 3217 Additional health and medical assistance needs may extend past NDMS resources requiring skilled
- 3218 and non-skilled labor forces to provide service in accordance with their capabilities. Assistance may
- 3219 come from agencies supporting ESF #6 (Mass Care, Emergency Assistance, Housing, and Human
- 3220 Services), ESF #8 (Public Health and Medical Services) such as:
- 3221 ▪ HHS Commissioned Corps of the U.S. Public Health Service Readiness and Deployment
 - 3222 Operations Group (RedDOG), available within 36 hours⁹⁶
 - 3223 ○ Rapid Deployment Force – for mass care at shelters (including FMSs) and staffing at
 - 3224 MCM/PPE distribution and casualty collection points (available within 12 hours)
 - 3225 ○ Applied Public Health Team – for assistance in public health assessments, environmental
 - 3226 health, infrastructure integrity, food safety, vector control, epidemiology, and surveillance
 - 3227 ○ Mental Health Team – for assessing stress within the affected population and responders,
 - 3228 and providing therapy and counseling
 - 3229 ▪ HHS CDC Epi-Aid teams, which provide epidemiologic assistance to SLTT public health
 - 3230 investigations

⁹⁵ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (2017, September 9). *Calling on NDMS*. Public Health Emergency, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR). <https://www.phe.gov/Preparedness/responders/ndms/Pages/calling-ndms.aspx>

⁹⁶ U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). (2021, May 14). *Medical Assistance*. Public Health Emergency, Office of the Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response (ASPR). <https://www.phe.gov/Preparedness/support/medicalassistance/Pages/default.aspx>

- 3231 ▪ [Medical Reserve Corps](#), a national network of medical and public health professionals who are
3232 coordinated at the local level to serve as volunteers in natural disasters and emergencies
- 3233 ▪ NGOs/VOADs and nonclinical volunteers



Coordination Opportunity

3234

3235 In addition to public health and HCCs, collaborate with local NGOs and VOADs, including
3236 medical schools and other healthcare-related academic training centers, to determine their
3237 capabilities and capacities. Work with these partners to develop a volunteer management plan
3238 for biological incident response.

3239 SLTT planners should coordinate with stakeholders to ensure that mutual-aid agreements
3240 include assistance to facilitate supply sharing when national supply chains face production
3241 delays, resource prioritization occurs, or SNS resources have been depleted.



Refer To

3242

- 3243 ▪ DHS [National Response Framework \(NRF\)](#), [Emergency Support Function \(ESF\) # 8: Public
3244 Health and Medical Services Annex \(2008\)](#)
- 3245 ▪ HHS CDC [Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National
3246 Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health \(2018\)](#), specifically
3247 Capability 5 – Fatality Management, Capability 10 – Medical Surge, and Capability 14 –
3248 Responder Safety and Health
- 3249 ▪ FEMA [Community Lifelines](#), specifically Health and Medical, for more information on
3250 essential operations
- 3251 ▪ DHS [National Disaster Recovery Framework \(NDRF\)](#), [Health and Social Services Recovery
3252 Support Function \(2011\)](#)
- 3253 ▪ [Defense Support of Civil Authorities](#) webpage for information on military support
- 3254 ▪ [DPA](#) to understand federal capabilities that help ensure protection of national security and
3255 critical infrastructure

What will you need to know?

3256

- 3257 What federal and SLTT governmental organizations will be part of the public health and
3258 medical response?
- 3259 ▪ What and how will they contribute to the incident response?
- 3260 When will NDMS teams be activated, and how are decisions made about where to send
3261 teams? Who coordinates these decisions for your jurisdiction, state, or region?

3262 KPF 6: Augment Essential Services to Achieve Recovery 3263 Outcomes

3264 Resilient and sustainable recovery encompasses not only the restoration of a community's
3265 physical structures but also the continuity of essential services and the needs of the community
3266 members. Recovery actions may require long-term economic support, restoration of interrupted
3267 critical infrastructure operations, site remediation, public health surveillance and behavioral
3268 health programs, community impact monitoring due to losses suffered and financial stress,
3269 and/or augmentation of essential services at varying levels. Mitigation of long-term impacts
3270 requires collaboration across community stakeholders to establish and prioritize recovery
3271 outcomes across the recovery continuum. Planning for incident recovery will facilitate the
3272 achievement of recovery outcomes for impacted communities through rapid and effective
3273 recovery operations.

3274 6.1 Recovery Planning, Indicators, and Priorities

3275 Planning for recovery is as critical as planning for response. Essential recovery activities should be
3276 implemented as early as possible in the incident's operational phase to ensure effective and
3277 efficient attainment of recovery outcomes. Recovery following many types of biological incidents is
3278 likely to be complex, resource-intensive, and challenging. Planning for recovery before an incident
3279 occurs and initiating recovery actions during the response phase has the potential to greatly reduce
3280 the time and money spent during the recovery phase and to improve outcomes for human, animal,
3281 and environmental health. Incident planning activities can facilitate recovery by preparing for
3282 anticipated resource needs such as medical staffing, treatment facilities, critical supplies, and
3283 mental health support for first responders and the general public, thus lessening the overall impact
3284 on the affected community and narrowing the gap to achieve recovery outcomes. Critical decisions
3285 made during the response (e.g., public health guidance issued for social distancing, early efforts to
3286 identify and conduct contact tracing for exposed individuals, etc.), if implemented early in the
3287 response, can vastly improve community mitigation efforts and shorten recovery times. Many initial
3288 recovery activities can take place in parallel with response activities.



3289
3290 **Figure 40: Achieving recovery outcomes will require meeting the multifaceted needs of the**
3291 **community, including housing, healthcare, and economic needs**

3292 **6.1.1 CONSIDERATIONS FOR LONG-TERM RECOVERY INDICATORS**

3293 For a biological incident to require long-term recovery efforts by emergency managers, it must pass a
 3294 certain threshold of community harm. While many types of biological incidents necessitate long-term
 3295 public health and medical involvement, only those causing major disruptions beyond the health
 3296 sector and throughout society will necessitate long-term emergency management involvement.
 3297 Recovery efforts by emergency managers will vary by biological incident type, community resilience,
 3298 and response capacity.

3299 Potential long-term recovery needs are most likely to include infrastructure, health and social
 3300 services, and economic support following a biological incident. Planners should consider the long-
 3301 term recovery needs created by historical biological incidents as compared to their community’s risk
 3302 for a biological incident and ability to respond.

3303 **Table 3: Comparison of historical biological incidents, their characteristics, and long-term**
 3304 **recovery needs**

Incident	Characteristics	Long-term Recovery Needs
Sverdlovsk Anthrax Outbreak (1979)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Accidental release 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Infrastructure recovery with site/environmental remediation
Amerithrax (2001)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Intentional attack ▪ Discrete locations 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Infrastructure recovery with site/environmental remediation ▪ Workforce exposure impacting infrastructure, health, and economic recovery ▪ Economic impacts
Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) (2003)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Natural outbreak ▪ Communicable agent ▪ Wide-area outbreak 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▪ Workforce exposure impacting infrastructure, health, and economic recovery ▪ Health and social services impacts ▪ Economic impacts with operations modifications

3305  **Action Item**

- 3306 ▪ Review federal, regional, and SLTT plans for response decisions to a biological incident
 3307 that may impact longer-term recovery planning and operations. Coordinate planning with
 3308 public health systems and HCCs in your area.
- 3309 ▪ Plan to initiate deliberative planning processes once the biological incident and its adverse
 3310 impacts are known. Deliberative recovery planning processes should focus on long-term

3311 recovery with courses of action identified, based on consensus-based decision, for senior
3312 leaders to review, deliberate, and approve for implementation during the response phase.



Refer To

- 3314 ▪ HHS CDC *Public Health Emergency Preparedness and Response Capabilities: National*
3315 *Standards for State, Local, Tribal, and Territorial Public Health* (2018), specifically
3316 Capability 2: Community Recovery
- 3317 ▪ DHS *National Disaster Recovery Framework* (2016) for more information on how the whole
3318 community builds, sustains, and coordinates delivery of recovery capabilities
- 3319 ▪ DHS *Response & Recovery Federal Interagency Operational Plans* (FIOPs; 2016)
- 3320 ▪ FEMA *Pre-Disaster Recovery Planning Guide for Local Governments* (2017)
- 3321 ▪ FEMA *Pre-Disaster Recovery Planning Guide for State Governments* (2016)
- 3322 ▪ FEMA *Pre-Disaster Recovery Planning Guide for Tribal Governments* (2019)
- 3323 ▪ American Planning Association *Planning for Post-Disaster Recovery: Next Generation*
3324 (2014)

3325 6.1.2 ESTABLISH AND REVIEW PRIORITIES FOR RECOVERY

3326 Initial recovery objectives should be formulated during the response phase. Many response activities
3327 described earlier in this document will continue throughout the recovery phase, although their focus
3328 and intensity may evolve over time (e.g., return-to-work guidance for first responders following a
3329 possible exposure, prophylaxis or vaccine clinic operations, mental health support, etc.). Recovery
3330 outcomes should be established and prioritized with a broad group of community stakeholders and
3331 may need to be re-evaluated after an incident occurs.

3332 Lead authority for many long-term recovery needs following a biological incident (e.g., dependent
3333 care considerations, healthcare resilience improvements, workforce attrition and loss, etc.) may lie
3334 outside of traditional emergency management structures. Emergency management planners should
3335 collaborate with planners from other sectors to determine how emergency management can most
3336 effectively support or coordinate stakeholders in planning for a biological incident.

3337 **Family and Workforce Considerations**

3338 If the biological incident results in many fatalities or long-term chronic health outcomes, a
3339 community will be heavily impacted for years to come. Individuals and families may suffer
3340 devastating financial losses if someone becomes unable to work following the incident. Families
3341 who lost someone due to the biological incident will be grieving the absence of their loved one,
3342 possibly in addition to dealing with the loss of family income after someone's passing.
3343 Arrangements for the long-term care of dependents like children and older adults must be made

3344 after a caretaker’s death. The frontline workforce (e.g., public safety, healthcare workers, grocery
3345 store workers, transit operators, etc.) may experience significant losses, burnout, and attrition
3346 within their professional communities while also having to continue performing their essential
3347 duties to serve the affected population throughout recovery.

3348 **Economic and Infrastructure Considerations**

3349 Local businesses may be impacted for months or years to come, often without the knowledge of
3350 how long a biological incident’s associated public health measures and restrictions will be in
3351 effect. Restoration of commercial activity may require adaptive and innovative business
3352 practices to meet the needs of the affected population. Contaminated or disrupted critical
3353 infrastructure must be restored and supply chain pressures must be relieved to support
3354 commerce and the movement of people and goods. Arrangements may need to be put in place
3355 for the long-term closures of contaminated facilities or buildings. Schools and childcare centers
3356 must be safe for children to return, and decisions surrounding the opening or closing of these
3357 facilities have enormous implications for parents. While critical infrastructure is typically not
3358 destroyed during a biological incident (except during a large-scale anthrax attack), it is the
3359 impacts on personnel and workforce shortages that are most likely to disrupt essential services.

3360 **Public Health and Medical Considerations**

3361 Local public health and healthcare systems may need to be strengthened during recovery to
3362 improve long-term resilience, including a focus on affected staff and medical logistics. Members
3363 of the affected population who were exposed to the biological agent must be identified,
3364 supported, provided with appropriate MCMs or monitoring, and communicated with regularly by
3365 health authorities until the risk to their physical health has been mitigated. Behavioral health
3366 concerns must also be addressed throughout the recovery phase and, in some cases, may last
3367 longer than physical health concerns. An affected community will expect updates from local
3368 health authorities throughout the recovery phase on the progress of recovery, ongoing site
3369 remediation, persistent or evolving threats, and any other pertinent issues affecting their health
3370 and safety resulting from the biological incident.



3371

3372

Figure 41: Disinfecting public facilities and transportation

- 3373 Planners should work with traditional and nontraditional community stakeholders to establish
3374 specific recovery outcomes (e.g., community health workers) based on the whole community's
3375 needs. Examples of recovery outcomes that could be used for a biological incident include:
- 3376 ▪ Lifesaving and life-sustaining assistance to SLTT and private sector entities are provided.
 - 3377 ▪ SLTT governments can provide individuals and families with the means to rebound from their
3378 losses in a manner that sustains their physical, emotional, social, and economic well-being.
 - 3379 ▪ Critical infrastructure capability and capacity are restored.
 - 3380 ▪ Public safety and health protection assurances are reestablished.
 - 3381 ▪ Response and recovery worker safety and health protection assurances have been
3382 reestablished.
 - 3383 ▪ Measures are in place to enable and restore commercial activity to meet the demand of the
3384 population. Economic impacts are minimized locally, nationally, and internationally.
 - 3385 ▪ Exposed populations are fully identified and have received appropriate MCM or other
3386 interventions to protect or restore health.
 - 3387 ▪ Behavioral/mental health needs of victims, responders, and other affected populations have
3388 been addressed.
 - 3389 ▪ The public has been provided the necessary information to protect against or recover from
3390 the biological incident.
 - 3391 ▪ Environmental assurances can be made that contaminated areas have been assessed for
3392 safety, need for decontamination, and appropriateness for re-occupancy.
 - 3393 ▪ Persistent disease threats to humans from animals or any other sources have been
3394 addressed and threats from reservoirs mitigated.
 - 3395 ▪ Appropriate care is identified for dependents (e.g., elderly, children, those with
3396 developmental disabilities, etc.) and animals without caretakers as a result of the incident.
 - 3397 ▪ All levels of communities have been addressed: elderly, children, people with access and
3398 functional needs, people with English as a second language, people with low literacy, and
3399 people with chronic conditions; sustainable activities are in place.



Coordination Opportunity

3400 Bring together planners from emergency management, public health, HCCs, and other private
3401 and public stakeholders (i.e., critical infrastructure systems, business community) in impacted
3402 jurisdictions to consider and formulate recovery objectives and priorities.

3404 Planners should work closely with the private sector on economic recovery efforts to coordinate
3405 resources and provide information that will instill confidence in the long-term viability of the

3406 regional economy. Improving public health and healthcare resilience during the recovery phase
3407 will strengthen overall community health and well-being into the future.

3408 **What will you need to know?**

- 3409 What are recovery priorities in your jurisdiction following a biological incident? Who should be
3410 engaged from your jurisdiction to help formulate these priorities?
- 3411 How can recovery efforts be designed to improve public health and healthcare resilience long
3412 term?
- 3413 What expertise and resources will be required to remediate site-level contamination and
3414 permit safe reuse/reoccupation of impacted facilities?
- 3415 What recovery resource limitations can be anticipated? What collaborative partnerships
3416 should be considered for plans?
- 3417 What NPIs and/or MCMs may need to continue during recovery? How will they impact your
3418 community?
- 3419 What public messaging will need to continue throughout recovery? How will you coordinate
3420 with public health authorities, HCCs, critical infrastructure, and other sectors to ensure
3421 consistent public messaging from multiple organizations?

3422 **6.2 Support the Affected Community Through Recovery Support Functions**

3423 Establishing how the recovery effort will be organized, including who or what will lead it and which
3424 players will be involved, is critical to community recovery. The recovery phase may involve agencies
3425 and organizations that did not play a major role in the response phase, such as mental health
3426 services and small business associations, as well as the continued support of voluntary and private
3427 organizations that did participate in response efforts. Recovery after a biological incident may involve
3428 ongoing healthcare worker burnout and attrition issues, long-term health effects among the affected
3429 population, challenges related to childcare centers and schools reopening, ongoing economic losses
3430 for families whose primary income earner passed away or became unable to work, persistent
3431 business and facility closures, continuing supply chain logistics interruptions, movement of
3432 hazardous waste containing infectious substances, and, following a large event, potentially major
3433 reorganizations of entire sectors.

3434 RSFs aid SLTT governments by facilitating problem solving, improving access to resources, and
3435 fostering coordination among multiple agencies and stakeholder organizations. During planning, the
3436 RSFs can be used to organize recovery considerations into six key areas as detailed in the *National*
3437 *Disaster Recovery Framework* (NDRF). Following a biological incident, some RSFs (i.e., health and
3438 social services, economic recovery, infrastructure systems) are more likely to be affected than others
3439 (i.e., housing, community planning and capacity building, natural and cultural resources). It will be
3440 critical to determine which RSFs have been impacted by a biological incident and where
3441 vulnerabilities lie in an affected community. Depending on the specific characteristics of the

3442 biological agent, such as communicable nature or wide-area impact of the incident, some services
 3443 provided to affected populations during response and early recovery may need to be continued long-
 3444 term (e.g., transition from a short-term Family Reunification Center to a Family Assistance Center for
 3445 long-term assistance).

3446 **Table 4: Recovery Objectives by Recovery Support Function**

Recovery Support Function	Recovery Outcome
Health and Social Services	Sustainable and resilient health, education, and social services systems
Economic	Sustainable, diversified, and resilient economy
Infrastructure Systems	Restored, modernized, hardened and resilient systems
Housing	Adequate, resilient, and affordable housing
Community Planning and Capacity Building (CPCB)	Resilient recovery of SLTT communities
Natural and Cultural Resources (NCR)	Restored, preserved, risk-resistant and resilient systems

3447  **Coordination Opportunity**

3448 Coordinate with decision makers, emergency responders, and local RSF partners to discuss
 3449 biological incident-specific concerns and questions with the whole community.

3450  **Refer To**

- 3451 ▪ DHS *National Disaster Recovery Framework, Recovery Support Functions* (RSFs) webpage
 3452 for more information on each of the six RSFs, which comprise the coordinating structure for
 3453 key functional areas of assistance in the NDRF

3454 **6.2.1 HEALTH AND SOCIAL SERVICES RECOVERY**

3455 A community recovering from a biological incident may face long-term public health and healthcare
 3456 challenges. Recovery may include providing long-term care for individuals with medical complications
 3457 or chronic conditions caused by the biological agent and associated incident. Certain impacted
 3458 populations and responders (e.g., law enforcement, EMS, hospital staff) may require long-term
 3459 health monitoring and/or continued exposure to the biological agent while performing their
 3460 professional duties. Health workers may experience exhaustion and burnout, contributing to attrition
 3461 of the local public health and hospital workforce. Public trust of health authorities and medical

3462 professionals may be compromised following a biological incident, potentially creating a contentious
3463 situation influencing public cooperation during future public health emergencies.

3464 A biological incident may expose existing weaknesses in local public health and healthcare systems.
3465 Recovery presents a unique opportunity to strengthen healthcare resilience of the affected
3466 community as it rebuilds moving forward. Resilient health systems adapt to disruption and withstand
3467 challenging events, while continuing to provide quality care for patients.⁹⁷ To increase local
3468 resilience, after-action planning, coordination, and capacity-building between public health,
3469 hospitals, EMS, outpatient clinics, long-term care facilities, clinical laboratories, medical suppliers,
3470 schools, childcare centers, and others must be improved. Working relationships built across sectors
3471 during the biological incident response may need to be formalized or established on a more
3472 permanent basis long term. Community decision makers should use trends observed and lessons
3473 learned during a biological incident in their area to inform strategic plans to fortify local healthcare
3474 resilience into the future.



3475

3476

Figure 42: Vulnerable populations may include daycare centers, preschools, nursing homes, and assisted living facilities

3477
3478

3479 To attain recovery outcomes, health systems must address the physical health needs of affected
3480 populations and a wide range of potential psychological, emotional, and behavioral health needs
3481 associated with the incident. Additional issues may develop long after the initial response phase of
3482 the incident is complete.⁹⁸ Into recovery, vulnerable populations like children and English-language
3483 learners may require continued social support to recover from incident stressors such as time spent
3484 away from school, falling behind in coursework, and lack of socialization with peers. Existing health

⁹⁷ Wiig, S., Aase, K., Billett, S., Canfield, C., Roise, O., Nja, O., Guise, V., Haraldseid-Driftland, C., Ree, E., Anderson, J., Macrae, C. (2020). Defining the boundaries and operational concepts of resilience in the resilience in healthcare research program. *BMC Health Services Research* 20(330). <https://doi.org/10.1186/s12913-020-05224-3>

⁹⁸ Russell, B.S., Hutchison, M., Tambling, R., Tomkunas, A.J., Horton, A.L. (2020). Initial Challenges of Caregiving During COVID-19: Caregiver Burden, Mental Health, and the Parent-Child Relationship. *Child Psychiatry & Human Development*, 51, 671-682. <https://doi.org/10.1007/s10578-020-01037-x>

3485 issues such as struggles with mental health or substance use disorders in the community may be
3486 exacerbated following a biological incident and its effects. Long-term behavioral health assistance
3487 may include psychological support and crisis counseling, providing information and educational
3488 resources, conducting assessments, and referring patients for treatment of behavioral health or
3489 substance use disorders.

3490 Emerging infectious diseases may present new and unfamiliar challenges to a population
3491 experiencing a biological incident. As new MCMs (e.g., vaccines, therapeutic medications) are
3492 developed, researched, and approved for novel pathogens, different segments of the population may
3493 be eligible to receive them at different times. Health authorities and trusted medical professionals
3494 must communicate the safety and efficacy of new treatments to the affected community in a timely,
3495 easy to comprehend, and transparent manner. Public and animal health organizations will also need
3496 to monitor long-term impacts of a biological incident on local animal populations (household pets,
3497 livestock, and wildlife), especially if the biological agent is zoonotic (i.e., a pathogen that jumped from
3498 animals to infect humans).



Coordination Opportunity

3499

3500 Collaborate with local emergency management, public health, and HCCs to develop plans to
3501 strengthen healthcare resilience over the long term based on post-incident after action
3502 reporting and the cataloguing of lessons learned. Collaborate with local behavioral health
3503 providers to identify resource requirements and plan for long-term, equitable support to the
3504 affected community. Coordinate with local social services agencies and organizations to
3505 understand existing vulnerabilities within the community pre-incident and to best prioritize
3506 needed services moving forward. Coordinate with SLTT animal health officials to discuss
3507 ongoing surveillance of relevant pathogens in household pets, livestock, and/or wildlife as
3508 indicated.



Action Item

3509

- 3510 ▪ Identify affected populations, groups, and key partners in recovery.
- 3511 ▪ Complete an assessment of community health and social service needs; prioritize these
3512 needs based on the whole community's input and participation in the recovery planning
3513 process; and develop a comprehensive recovery timeline that includes consideration of
3514 available human and budgetary resources.
- 3515 ▪ Restore healthcare (including behavioral health), public health, and social services
3516 functions.
- 3517 ▪ Restore and improve the resilience and sustainability of the healthcare system and social
3518 service capabilities and networks to promote the independence and well-being of
3519 community members in accordance with the specified recovery timeline.

- 3520 ▪ Implement strategies to protect the health and safety of the public and recovery workers
3521 from the effects of a post-disaster environment.
- 3522 ▪ Establish long-term coordination mechanisms with public health systems, including passive
3523 monitoring systems, to facilitate information sharing to achieve established recovery
3524 outcomes.
- 3525 ▪ Collaborate with local private organizations and NGOs for behavioral and mental health
3526 support services.



Refer To

- 3528 ▪ HHS ASPR TRACIE [Disaster Behavioral Health](#) webpage for more information on available
3529 resources
- 3530 ▪ Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration [Disaster Behavioral Health
3531 Resources](#) webpage
- 3532 ▪ HHS [Disaster Behavioral Health](#) and [Disaster Behavioral Health: Federal Response and
3533 Assets](#) webpages
- 3534 ▪ American Red Cross [Emotional Responses](#) resources webpage

What will you need to know?

- 3536 Within healthcare and public health, how will you know the status of critical services facilities
3537 and their providers and make appropriate adjustments as needed during the recovery
3538 phase?
- 3539 ▪ Medical and public health?
- 3540 ▪ Behavioral health?
- 3541 ▪ Social services?
- 3542 How will you identify and remediate specific issues that may impact the longer-term
3543 healthcare resilience of the affected community?
- 3544 How will you collaborate with partners in healthcare, public health, public safety, and
3545 emergency management to fortify healthcare resilience over the long term?
- 3546 What will be needed to support the management and care of dependents at congregate care
3547 facilities when normal caregivers are absent (e.g., nursing homes, prisons, and congregate
3548 animal facilities such as zoos, etc.)?
- 3549 How will human remains be processed? How will you know if there are any workforce,
3550 resource and/or logistical issues? Will any special permits be required?
- 3551 How will public health actions be determined?

- 3552 What counseling support services are available in your community? What are their
3553 capacities?
- 3554 What behavioral health support services are available for response workers long term?
- 3555 How will you ensure equitable access to behavioral health and other support services?

3556 **6.2.2 ECONOMIC RECOVERY**

3557 A biological incident has the potential to greatly impact local, regional, national, and international
3558 economies. Economic recovery after a biological incident is characterized by the successful return of
3559 economic and business activities within a sustainable, diversified, and resilient economy. Pre-
3560 disaster recovery planning specific to biological incident impacts can dramatically reduce the time
3561 needed to meet economic recovery challenges by thoroughly engaging economic recovery
3562 stakeholders and their networks and leveraging existing resources. After an incident, the economic
3563 recovery needs of local businesses, individuals, nonprofits, and governments tend to shift as time
3564 progresses.

3565 Immediate and downstream economic effects may be inadvertently created when compliance with
3566 public health orders leads to modified operating procedures and business closures. Employers may
3567 be forced to temporarily close or permanently relocate due to labor shortages/workforce attrition,
3568 supply chain disruptions, lack of customers, longer-term environmental concerns, etc. These
3569 economic impacts also affect the community with a loss of income or savings. Ultimately,
3570 communities may need support for economic revitalization in the aftermath of a biological incident.

3571 Planners will need to collaborate with the public sector, nonprofits, chambers of commerce,
3572 workforce development organizations, local governments, regional planning organizations, and
3573 private organizations to assist with economic revitalization increasing employment opportunities,
3574 remediating deficiencies effectively, managing supply chains more efficiently, and rebuilding public
3575 trust. Economic impacts may stem from business closures, job loss, supply chain disruptions, etc.
3576 and may also stem from public fear. In 2016, for example, the fear of contracting Zika virus disease
3577 in Florida had economic impacts on the tourism industry.

3578 To achieve economic recovery outcomes, planners must consider the varying economic impacts
3579 biological incidents will have in their jurisdiction. Biological incidents involving a communicable agent
3580 will necessitate response measures (i.e., quarantines and movement controls that are highly
3581 effective at limiting disease spread) that may also disrupt typical business operations and create
3582 subsequent long-term recovery challenges. However, biological incidents with a discrete location –
3583 whether they are intentional, accidental, or naturally occurring – may necessitate similar response
3584 measures without leading to the same associated long-term, widespread economic recovery
3585 impacts. Planners should consider how the varying public health orders that may be implemented
3586 during response will impact recovery. Furthermore, planners can increase the adaptability of their
3587 jurisdiction’s plans by accounting for varying mitigation measures to facilitate rapid recovery.

3588



Coordination Opportunity

3589
3590
3591
3592

Community engagement during the planning process is essential to attain economic recovery outcomes. Build relationships with service providers and business leaders in your region. Develop agreements for sustained provision of services and economic revitalization building activities while working toward recovery outcomes.

3593



Action Item

3594
3595
3596
3597
3598
3599
3600

- Develop economic recovery plans with economic stakeholders including SLTT governments, public or private businesses, local business organizations, etc.
- Assign stakeholder roles and responsibilities to help identify major issues through stakeholder suggested response and recovery strategies and available resources.
- Explore incentives to include in your plans to help businesses overcome challenges; identify and eliminate disincentives when and wherever possible.
- Engage your local Small Business Association (SBA) when reviewing or creating your plans.

3601



Refer To

3602
3603
3604

- SBA *Disaster Preparedness and Recovery Plan* (2019)
- SBA [Disaster Assistance](#) webpage for more information on how to facilitate recovery actions for small businesses

3605

What will you need to know?

3606
3607
3608
3609
3610
3611
3612
3613
3614
3615
3616

- How will your biological incident recovery plans mitigate long-term economic challenges?
- How will you identify and take action to mitigate the economic impacts of long-term supply chain issues?
- What economic business recovery assistance is available through private sector partners?
- How can local governmental and private sector partners support lost worker income?
- Are there existing regional agreements that will influence or inform your biological incident planning efforts (e.g., existing EMACs with neighboring jurisdictions, international border considerations)?
- What local recovery resources are available to support economic recovery for recurrent outbreaks?
- What support is available to local tourism businesses?

- 3617 What are the associated economic impacts related to travel restrictions for non-essential
- 3618 activities?
- 3619 What programs are available to maintain business continuity and support recovery?

3620 6.2.3 INFRASTRUCTURE SYSTEMS RECOVERY

3621 A biological incident will impact infrastructure systems differently than other types of disasters. Long-
3622 term impacts for the operation of critical services and infrastructure during recovery may be ongoing
3623 due to long-term community NPIs, personnel illness/workforce attrition, reduced capacity, facility
3624 contamination, or long-term supply chain impacts.

3625 While resource owners play the primary role in including resilience activities and identifying the
3626 greatest vulnerabilities in terms of their systems and the people and businesses they serve,
3627 achieving recovery outcomes for the whole community depends on fully operational critical
3628 infrastructure systems, and subsequently, their workers. Long-term shortages of critical
3629 infrastructure operators due to illness or exposure in the context of extended outbreaks or
3630 pandemics and other workforce attrition issues may prevent systems from being fully functional and
3631 may lead to disruptions in continuity of critical services, supply chain logistics, essential personnel
3632 movement, and facility safety and security. To facilitate recovery from a biological incident, planners
3633 should anticipate and identify approaches to mitigate workforce shortages and attrition due to
3634 worker illness, unavailability of childcare, need to care for someone sick within their household, etc.
3635 In addition, planners must account for prioritization of MCM dispensing and administration to
3636 essential workers in critical infrastructure sectors such as transportation, energy, and
3637 communications, among various others.



3638
3639 **Figure 43: Recovery may require protective measures for critical infrastructure operation⁹⁹**

⁹⁹ Griggs, C. (n.d.). *Air traffic controllers work in their tower wearing protective gear* [Photograph]. Air Force. <https://www.defense.gov/News/Feature-Stories/Story/Article/2160380/air-force-materiel-command-operations-continue-despite-covid-19/#pop4159192>

3640 While recovery from most biological incidents will not require decontamination of a physical space,
3641 some biological agents will require immediate containment, establishment of clearance goals, and
3642 cleanup initiated during response in coordination with public health officials (as discussed in KPF 3,
3643 Control the Spread of Disease) to achieve recovery outcomes. Incidents with a discrete location may
3644 require long-term barriers or remediation activities (e.g., anthrax release in a train station). The goal
3645 of these activities is to eliminate or reduce contamination of the population, environment, and
3646 critical infrastructure to facilitate rapid recovery. The sustained health effects associated with
3647 contaminated water systems will require a coordinated public messaging focus well into the recovery
3648 phase (see KPF 2, Communicate with External Partners and the Public) with status updates on how
3649 the incident is being addressed and any protective actions in effect (e.g., when boil water orders are
3650 no longer necessary).

3651 The type of biological agent involved can also have an impact on recovery-focused activities such as
3652 hazardous waste transport, processing, and disposal. Infectious substances are regulated by the
3653 U.S. Department of Transportation's Hazardous Materials Regulations (HMR) and generally fall into
3654 three groups: Category A (in a form causing permanent disability or life-threatening or fatal disease),
3655 Category B (not in a form generally capable of causing permanent disability or life-threatening or fatal
3656 disease), and Regulated Medical Waste.¹⁰⁰ As examples, Ebola-contaminated waste was classified
3657 as Category A,¹⁰¹ while COVID-19 contaminated waste was classified as Category B,¹⁰² which
3658 resulted in differing requirements for transporting waste based on the pathogen. All HMR
3659 requirements must be met when infectious substances are transported by air, highway, rail, or water.
3660 Infectious Substance Special Permits may be required when shippers are unable to comply with
3661 HMR. Ebola waste, identified as Category A above, was unable to cross state lines without issuance
3662 of these special permits.¹⁰³ Management of large quantities of hazardous waste may prove
3663 challenging and further drain resources through recovery.

¹⁰⁰ U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration. (2020, April 2). *Transporting Infectious Substances Overview*. <https://www.phmsa.dot.gov/transporting-infectious-substances/transporting-infectious-substances-overview>

¹⁰¹ U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration. (2020, April 2). *Packaging of Ebola Contaminated Waste*. <https://www.phmsa.dot.gov/transporting-infectious-substances/packaging-ebola-contaminated-waste>

¹⁰² U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration. (2020, April 28). *COVID-19 Information*. <https://www.phmsa.dot.gov/transporting-infectious-substances/covid-19-information>

¹⁰³ ¹⁰³ U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) Pipeline and Hazardous Materials Safety Administration. (2020, April 2). *Infectious Substance Special Permits*. <https://www.phmsa.dot.gov/transporting-infectious-substances/infectious-substance-special-permits>



Coordination Opportunity

3664

3665 Collaborate with local jurisdictions to develop mutual aid agreements for resource sharing due
3666 to long-term critical infrastructure interruptions.

3667 Collaborate with local waste management organizations (private and governmental) to pre-
3668 establish waste containment and disposal methods as well as auxiliary disposal sites.



Action Item

3669

- 3670 ▪ Identify and plan for key incident indicators and recovery resources for local critical
3671 infrastructure.
- 3672 ▪ Identify the locations and vulnerabilities of critical infrastructure in your jurisdiction.
- 3673 ▪ Prioritize critical infrastructure and services restoration based on factors such as
3674 infrastructure or service asset status, interdependencies, and relationships to recovery
3675 objectives; contributions to services; workaround availability; and recovery milestone
3676 requirements.
- 3677 ▪ Include methods to facilitate the restoration and sustainment of essential services (public
3678 and private) to maintain community functionality within plans.
- 3679 ▪ Coordinate planning for infrastructure redevelopment.
- 3680 ▪ Ensure specified timelines are included for developing, redeveloping, and enhancing
3681 community infrastructures to contribute to resilience, accessibility, and sustainability.
- 3682 ▪ Include support for strategies for systems that meet the community needs while minimizing
3683 service disruption during restoration within the specified timeline in the recovery plan.
- 3684 ▪ Communicate disruptions of critical infrastructure and the associated recovery timelines.
3685 (Refer to KPF 2, Communicate with External Partners and the Public.)



Refer To

3686

- 3687 ▪ Transportation Research Board (TRB) National Cooperative Highway Research Program
3688 (NCHRP) Report 769 *A Guide for Public Transportation Pandemic Planning and Response*
3689 (2014)
- 3690 ▪ American Public Transportation Association *Summary: A Guide for Public Transportation*
3691 *Pandemic Planning and Response (NCHRP Report 769)* (2020)
- 3692 ▪ TRB NCHRP Report 963/TCRP Report 225 *A Pandemic Playbook for Transportation*
3693 *Agencies* (2021)

- 3694 ▪ TRB [Airport Cooperative Research Program Infectious Disease Resources](#) webpage
- 3695 ▪ International Civil Aviation Organization [Collaborative Arrangement for the Prevention and](#)
- 3696 ▪ [Management of Public Health Events in Civil Aviation](#) webpage
- 3697 ▪ WHO [International Health Regulations \(2005\): A Guide for Public Health Emergency](#)
- 3698 ▪ [Contingency Planning at Designated Points of Entry](#) (2012)
- 3699 ▪ EPA [Publications on Homeland Security Research Topics](#) for additional information on
- 3700 ▪ sampling and analysis, remediation of biological contamination – including waste
- 3701 ▪ management, and water infrastructure incident response
- 3702 ▪ EPA [Best Practices for Management of Biocontaminated Waste](#) (2016)
- 3703 ▪ Healthcare Environmental Resource Center [State-by-State Regulated Medical Waste](#)
- 3704 ▪ [Resource Locator](#) webpage
- 3705 ▪ DHS [National Response Framework](#) (NRF), [Emergency Support Function # 10: Oil and](#)
- 3706 ▪ [Hazardous Materials Response Annex](#) (2016) for more information about EPA’s role in
- 3707 ▪ decontamination and cleanup
- 3708 ▪ DHS Cybersecurity and Infrastructure Security Agency (CISA) [Critical Infrastructure Sectors](#)
- 3709 ▪ webpage; sectors were established in Presidential Policy Directive-21 (PPD-21)

3710 **What will you need to know?**

- 3711 Which of the 16 critical infrastructure sectors established in PPD-21 might be most impacted
- 3712 by a biological incident in your jurisdiction?
- 3713 How will critical infrastructure-related concerns be identified, prioritized, and coordinated?
- 3714 How will you know the status of critical infrastructures?
- 3715 ▪ Critical infrastructure facilities?
- 3716 ▪ Critical infrastructure workforces?
- 3717 ▪ Critical infrastructure logistics and supply chains?
- 3718 Are there any Sector Coordinating Councils under the [National Infrastructure Protection Plan](#)
- 3719 that need to be consulted for planning?
- 3720 How will you identify and take action to address long-term supply chain logistics issues?
- 3721 What resources are available to mitigate supply chain failure?
- 3722 What are the anticipated workforce shortages? What resources are available to support
- 3723 resilience?
- 3724 What plans are in place to ensure equitable allocation of resources for critical infrastructure
- 3725 recovery?
- 3726 How will hazardous waste be managed from a long-term perspective?
- 3727 ▪ How will you determine if there are any associated workforce, resource, or logistical issues?

- 3728 ▪ Will any special permits be required?
- 3729 ▪ Where are the pre-approved hazardous waste disposal sites/locations? What is their
3730 capacity?
- 3731 ▪ What are alternative locations for hazardous waste disposal or storage?
- 3732 ▪ What transportation limitations could prevent movement of hazardous waste between
3733 jurisdictions? What local agreements are in place?

3734 **6.2.4 ADDITIONAL RSF CONSIDERATIONS: HOUSING, COMMUNITY PLANNING AND**
3735 **CAPACITY BUILDING, AND NATURAL AND CULTURAL RESOURCES**

3736 While Economic, Infrastructure Systems, and Health and Social Services RSFs potentially will be
3737 most affected by a biological incident, Housing, Community Planning and Capacity Building (CPCB),
3738 and Natural and Cultural Resources (NCR) RSFs must not be forgotten.

3739 The Housing recovery outcome ensures adequate, resilient, and affordable housing is accessible.
3740 These recovery outcomes should be based on principles that are in line with and linked to existing
3741 long-term community recovery plans and processes. Large-scale biological incidents involving a
3742 communicable agent have the highest potential to require long-term housing support to reduce
3743 transmission, mitigate impacts, and facilitate a more rapid recovery. Collaboration with public and
3744 private organizations that have experience with temporary housing, permanent housing financing,
3745 economic development, and advocacy for underserved populations should be engaged early in the
3746 planning process.

3747 Regarding CPCB, the achievement of recovery outcomes means a resilient recovery of SLTT
3748 communities. Engagement of communities in preparedness and planning leads to a more rapid
3749 recovery with buy-in for decisions that impact the whole community. One way to increase
3750 engagement and decrease biological incident impacts is through education. Planners may develop a
3751 community education program, including concepts such as HHS CDC’s One Health (collaborative
3752 approach with the goal of achieving optimal health outcomes recognizing the interconnection
3753 between people, animals, plants, and their shared environment) and global health security (prevent,
3754 detect, and respond to intentional, naturally occurring, or accidental incidents), to increase public
3755 understanding of biological incidents and their effects on the community.

3756 Achieving recovery outcomes for the NCR RSF equates to restored, preserved, risk-resistant and
3757 resilient systems. Planners should focus on the community’s natural and cultural resources and
3758 historic properties that could be impacted during a biological incident to include preparedness and
3759 mitigation strategies that are inclusive, sustainable, and resilient. Certain biological incidents may
3760 require environmental remediation activities such as water system decontamination or wildlife
3761 disease mitigation. Wildlife disease control measures will require specific natural and cultural
3762 resource considerations for environmental recovery, conservation, and historic preservation.

3763 When planning recovery actions, consider how local and regional culture will impact community
3764 engagement. Planning activities should consider existing inequities and disproportionate impacts on

3765 vulnerable populations and traditionally underserved elements within local communities. A large-
3766 scale biological incident will have a heavy burden on those living in multi-generational or public
3767 housing, lacking access to medical or behavioral health treatment, working in positions that must
3768 report in person without the option to telework, or depending on public transportation for mobility.
3769 Planners must account for underlying factors such as poverty and language barriers throughout
3770 community recovery efforts. Vulnerable populations should be considered and supported during
3771 every stage of response and recovery activities.



Refer To

3772

3773 HHS CDC [One Health](#) and [Healthy Pets, Healthy People](#) webpages for information on zoonotic
3774 diseases and related One Health issues in livestock, companion animals, and wildlife



Action Item

3775

- 3776 ▪ Establish plans for guiding long-term activities and resource allocations that prioritize
3777 recovery objectives; facilitate equity in recovery actions through plans that help mitigate
3778 biological impacts of historically marginalized communities and vulnerable populations;
3779 and take into account biological incident recovery plans from federal, regional, and other
3780 SLTT partners that may impact your planning.
- 3781 ▪ Ensure plans compare the restoration timeline with milestone requirements and assess
3782 whether all requirements are being met. (If all requirements are not being met, consider re-
3783 prioritization or development of alternative workarounds.)
- 3784 ▪ Continually reassess post-disaster needs for long-term housing and the available
3785 community support.
- 3786 ▪ Address affordable, accessible, and workforce housing needs in community planning
3787 efforts.
- 3788 ▪ Define a feasible timeline in community recovery plans for achieving a resilient, accessible,
3789 and sustainable housing market.
- 3790 ▪ Include ways to engage the community in recovery planning, such as through education
3791 and preparedness efforts.
- 3792 ▪ Preserve natural and cultural resources as part of an overall community recovery that is
3793 achieved through the coordinated efforts of natural and cultural resource experts and the
3794 recovery team in accordance with the specified timeline in the recovery plan.

3795 **6.3 Post-Incident Recovery Planning**

3796 Recovery and revitalization activities for some biological incidents will be so complex that existing
3797 plans may require additional stakeholder engagement to achieve recovery outcomes. Post-incident

3798 recovery planning supports a post-incident decision-making process to adapt and implement pre-
3799 incident priorities and policies. This post-incident planning allows SLTT leaders and community
3800 stakeholders to make complex, community-wide decisions for integration of public, private, and non-
3801 governmental efforts across core capabilities; set recovery goals and priorities at the community
3802 level; and manage recovery and resource allocation locally. The planning process aids community
3803 leaders in setting and communicating benchmarks to measure progress toward a community-
3804 defined successful outcome, even post-incident.

3805 In addition, long-term recovery for biological incidents presents opportunities to incorporate lessons
3806 learned from previous outbreaks or infection waves within the same incident (e.g., integration of
3807 improved communication for risk of transmission, disclosure of implementation of crisis standards of
3808 care, etc. during the COVID-19 pandemic). Lessons learned should be considered when planning to
3809 improve future response and recovery needs.

3810 **Planning, Decision-Support, and Modeling Resources for** 3811 **Biological Incidents**

3812 Biological incidents, whether naturally occurring (such as the 2003 SARS outbreak) or
3813 deliberately caused (such as the 2001 Amerithrax incident), may require the use of specialized
3814 resources that can assist response and recovery efforts. For example, modeling and simulation
3815 tools can help synthesize available information, provide timely analysis, and guide planning
3816 decisions at various jurisdictional levels. Modeling encompasses the engineering of a specialized
3817 tool to represent an event, while simulation is the use of the model to study a system or
3818 behavior.

3819 Modeling and simulation tools can support SLTT planning and response activities by providing
3820 information on exposure risk, timing and location of illnesses and injuries, estimation of resources
3821 needed and their source, and other data needed to build situational awareness. Both modeling and
3822 simulation tools require inputs (e.g., incident time, population size, resources available) to provide
3823 outputs (e.g., percentage of population at risk, resources needed, POD location recommendations,
3824 Geographic Information System [GIS] maps, etc.), which emergency managers can then use for
3825 planning and decision-making. Modeling and simulation tools can also help define the geographic
3826 area in which people, animals, and the environment may be affected by a biological agent release
3827 and help estimate the population at risk.

3828 **Defining Modeling Tools**

3829 There are broad categories of models available to the emergency management community to assist
3830 in biological incident response and recovery. Infectious disease models are computational
3831 representations, frequently illustrated in either graphic and/or geographic (e.g., state, county)
3832 layouts, that forecast essential information requirements. These may include estimated incident
3833 cases (based on daily or seven-day averages) or new hospitalizations over days or weeks.
3834 Atmospheric models are also computational representations, frequently illustrated on a GIS platform,
3835 of dispersion flow of a biological agent for either indoor or outdoor venues based on meteorological
3836 conditions, particle size, release quantity, and/or other factors.

3837 Models afford several benefits to an emergency manager. Most importantly, they can provide context
3838 to a biological incident to help inform decisions. For example, models simulating a wide-area release
3839 of weaponized anthrax in an urban area can help emergency managers identify potential areas of
3840 contamination and estimated numbers of exposed individuals based on agent release rate, source
3841 location, quantity released, weather conditions (e.g., wind, precipitation), and current census data.
3842 The same data, illustrated in a GIS platform, can also inform the selection of locations for mass care
3843 shelters, medical countermeasure dispensing/administration sites, and entry and egress to
3844 contaminated areas. Forecast models for an active outbreak or emerging infectious disease can
3845 inform estimates of resource needs or anticipated requests for medical countermeasures and the
3846 locations where such demand is or will likely be high.

3847 **Interagency Modeling and Atmospheric Assessment Center (IMAAC)**

3848 IMAAC Technical Operation Hub (DoD Defense Threat Reduction Agency [DTRA]), in collaboration
3849 with HHS, has modeling capabilities to support response and recovery efforts during a biological
3850 incident using its Hazard Prediction and Assessment Capability (HPAC). HPAC considers weather
3851 conditions to calculate the transport of an agent through the outdoor environment and estimate
3852 consequences of the release, such as areas contaminated, doses received by people in the
3853 affected area, and the likely numbers of injured, ill, and/or dead inhabitants.

3854 **Model and Data Inventory (MoDI)**

3855 MoDI is a collection of available data and monitoring resources developed for the Emergency
3856 Support Function Leadership Group. The MoDI inventory was informed by a comprehensive
3857 analysis of data and models used to support emergency management decision-making for
3858 floods, hurricanes, earthquakes, biological scenarios, and nuclear detonation scenarios. The
3859 online data can be filtered to call out the specific tools and datasets applicable to biological
3860 incidents (either bioterrorism or a naturally occurring disease outbreak).

3861 **Modeling and Simulation Uses and Limitations**

3862 Various types of planning and response tools are available to assist planners and decision makers
3863 during biological incident response and recovery. Some models and simulations are easy to use,
3864 accessible to everyone, and designed for use at the local level. Other resources are more
3865 sophisticated, require specialized data sources, SMEs to access or interpret, and are not readily
3866 available at the local or regional level. These capabilities are accessed through reach back to federal
3867 agencies or SMEs.

3868 In all cases, planners must understand the data requirements and specific purposes for which the
3869 models were designed and how these limit the ability to use the data outputs. Atmospheric models,
3870 for example, cannot accurately predict cross-contamination or spread of biological agents outside
3871 the identified geographic areas of concern. In addition, such models cannot accurately predict
3872 biological agent runoff, due to precipitation and/or decontamination efforts, into nearby surface
3873 water systems.¹⁰⁴ Infectious disease models forecasting new cases or hospitalizations are
3874 challenged by social factors such as communities or individuals implementing NPIs (e.g., social
3875 distancing, staying home from social venues), or conversely, behaviors that increase risk (e.g.,
3876 increased travel particularly during weekends or holidays). They also cannot forecast emerging
3877 variants of a biological agent, which may result in either increased or decreased rates of
3878 transmissibility, virulence, or MCM effectiveness.

¹⁰⁴ There are surface water modeling tools for CBRN agents, but their use is complicated by multiple sources (e.g., runoffs) versus single source release.

3879 Furthermore, models can only generate outputs based on the quality of corresponding data inputs.
3880 Sharing of new incident data as it becomes available is critical to ensuring modeling estimates are
3881 refined, updated, and able to provide the best possible information to support decision-making. In
3882 the early phases of a biological incident, a planner may not have timely, accurate input data. (Refer
3883 to [KPF 1, Detect and Characterize the Threat](#) for more information on data collection and
3884 limitations.) Incomplete or limited data may result in models and simulations providing highly
3885 inaccurate results that should be regarded with some degree of skepticism, especially during the
3886 initial response phase of a biological incident. However, as more is known about an incident, models
3887 generally provide more refined outputs to better guide decision-making in response and recovery.

3888 Modeling and simulation tools included in [Table 5](#) below can be used by planners to help their
3889 jurisdictions respond to and recover from biological incidents. This list of modeling and simulation
3890 tools, decision support tools, and databases is not intended to be comprehensive, but rather serves
3891 as a starting point for planners seeking resources to facilitate key functions and decision-making
3892 during biological incident response and recovery. Planners should begin by assessing the tools that
3893 are already in use in their jurisdictions.

3894  Refer To

- 3895 ▪ DHS [Model and Data Inventory \(MoDI\)](#) for more information about federal modeling and
3896 simulation resources
- 3897 ▪ FEMA [Interagency Modeling and Atmospheric Assessment Center](#) webpage for more
3898 information
- 3899 ▪ HHS [ASPR Tools & Technical Assistance](#) webpage provides information on additional tools,
3900 technical assistance, and training available to planners.

3901  Coordination Opportunity

3902 Collaborate with local, state, or federal public health officials to identify modeling and
3903 simulation tools that can support your jurisdiction or that are already being used to monitor
3904 biological incidents. Work with local HCCs and public health authorities to coordinate data
3905 access and integration into modeling and simulation tools.

3906 Collaborate with academic institutions, centers of excellence, and government agencies to
3907 leverage existing resources and develop appropriate modeling to help inform decision makers
3908 during biological incident response and recovery.

3909 Coordinate with modeling resource centers, such as IMAAC, to understand what tools are
3910 available for use in your jurisdiction. A single point of contact can be leveraged for access to
3911 multiple models or resources.



Action Item

3912

3913

Understand your organization's in-house capacity for modeling and simulation.

3914

- Will you have sufficient resources (qualified personnel on staff, appropriate IT infrastructure, etc.) to support running models in-house?

3915

3916

- Will you need to partner with outside organizations for modeling and simulation?

3917

Identify which tools are best suited for the scenarios that are most likely in your jurisdiction, which tools are already in use in your jurisdiction, and which tools you are likely to use.

3918

3919

- Familiarize planners and responders with [CBRNResponder](#) tool.

3920

- Connect with academic resources within your jurisdiction.

3921

- Contact IMAAC for more advanced modeling at imaac@fema.dhs.gov or 1-877-240-1187.

3922

Select models that are appropriate to estimate the impact of the threat(s) of concern for your jurisdiction.

3923

3924

- Run simulations with varying input parameters to test out the variability and sensitivity of the results to uncertainties in the input data.

3925

3926

- Be prepared to rerun models to help inform decisions as the incident progresses and more data becomes available.

3927

3928

- Run models and simulations, including during planned exercise activities, to ensure expected outputs align with planned use.

3929

3930

Identify local, real-world data sources (e.g., syndromic surveillance, hospital capacity) that will provide the latest available information necessary to populate selected models.

3931

3932

- How will you collect and pre-position accurate and timely local data that will be needed for modeling and simulation?

3933

3934

- If current information will not be readily available, what method will you establish to obtain the required information?

3935

3936

- If required, establish accounts with any national databases that will be needed.

3937

What will you need to know?

3938

When will you need to use modeling and simulation tools? Consider all aspects of biological incident response and recovery:

3939

3940

- Atmospheric dispersion event characterization and consequence analysis

3941

- Estimates of outpatient visits, hospitalizations, and deaths for a respiratory pandemic

3942

- Syndromic surveillance

3943

- Routing vehicle fleets to optimize delivery of MCMs/SNS/PODs

- 3944 ▪ Flow of persons through PODs
- 3945 ▪ Regional spread of infectious disease
- 3946 ▪ Situational awareness, assessment, and management of resources
- 3947 ▪ Location and availability of critical pharmaceuticals and local supplies
- 3948 □ What planning, decision support, and modeling resources are available to you?
- 3949 ▪ Which are best suited for the risks identified in your jurisdiction?
- 3950 ▪ Which tools are already in use in your jurisdiction?
- 3951 ▪ Are such tools integrated into your response planning?
- 3952 ▪ Which tools are likely to be used following an incident?
- 3953 □ Which FSLTT partners can support optimization of shared and available resources?
- 3954 ▪ For what purpose are models and simulations run by a partner organization? When? Are
- 3955 models and simulations automatically run as part of their protocols? If not, what triggers
- 3956 models and simulations into action?
- 3957 ▪ Can models and simulations be accessed by other FSLTT stakeholders?
- 3958 □ Which data will be needed from you to run a partner organization's tools?
- 3959 ▪ How will it be provided? What agreements between organizations must be put in place prior
- 3960 to a biological incident to facilitate data-sharing and confidentiality?
- 3961 ▪ How will you access current data on available medical resources (e.g., hospital beds,
- 3962 supplies, equipment, medical/public health personnel)?
- 3963 ▪ Where will you obtain access to the latest population demographic data (if not built into the
- 3964 tool), inventories of available resources, and response impacts?
- 3965 ▪ How will you update the relevant information—either as the input datasets for models run
- 3966 locally or in the request for model runs by supporting partners?
- 3967 □ How will model results be reported and to whom?
- 3968 ▪ How will model outputs be packaged and presented for decision makers?
- 3969 ▪ How will the incorporation of the evolving results change as response unfolds?
- 3970 ▪ Who will interpret the results? Public health or emergency management?
- 3971 ▪ What local SMEs will be available to help clarify data and advise?
- 3972 ▪ Who will act on the results?

Table 5: Planning, Response, and Decision Support Tools—Operations and Response Management

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
GeoHEALTH Platform [HHS]	A secure, GIS-based, electronic, and interactive mapping application that provides enhanced situational awareness, assessment, and management of resources for pandemic and man-made events. Click here for more information on the GeoHEALTH Platform.	Planning, Response, and Recovery	Data continuously updated over internet
HHS emPOWER Map [HHS]	A map that provides monthly updated de-identified totals at the national, state, territorial, county, and zip code level for Medicare beneficiaries reliant on electricity-dependent medical and assistive equipment and devices who can be threatened by severe weather or other emergencies. This information helps communities to better anticipate, plan for, and address the potential needs of these at-risk individuals who may rapidly need assistance in the event of an incident, emergency, or disaster. Click here for more information on HHS emPOWER Map. Access HHS emPOWER Map here.	Planning	Data updated monthly
Inventory Management and Tracking System (IMATS) [HHS ASPR]	A system that allows planners and responders to manage the large and moving MCM inventory received from the SNS. Capabilities include the ability to track MCM inventory down to local levels; support warehouse operations; monitor reorder thresholds; record counts for dispensed MCMs; monitor operations status through a comprehensive dashboard; run reports and extracts for inventory counts and transaction data; create custom roles for users; import existing data on facilities, storage locations, products, etc.; and collect data from local jurisdictions, aggregate, and report inventory totals. Click here for more information on IMATS. Contact the IMATS help desk at imatshelp@cdc.gov for system access.	Response and Recovery	Immediate predictions once baseline data is entered

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
Community Flu 2.0 [HHS CDC]	A software program that simulates the spread of influenza through a model community and the impact of a variety of potential interventions (e.g., vaccinations, school closings, wearing of face masks, patient and household isolation/self-quarantine). Click here for more information on Community Flu 2.0. Download the Community Flu 2.0 tool here.	Planning	Less than 5 minutes to run simulations
FluAid 2.0 [HHS CDC]	A custom, stand-alone application that provides estimates of the total numbers of deaths, hospitalizations, and outpatient visits for an influenza pandemic (before interventions are applied). Results are limited to influenza and should be treated as general guidelines only. Click here for more information on FluAid 2.0. Download the FluAid 2.0 tool here.	Planning	Immediate predictions once baseline data is entered
FluSurge 2.0 [HHS CDC]	A macro-enabled, Microsoft Excel spreadsheet that estimates the impact of an influenza pandemic on the demand for hospital-based services. Results are limited specifically to influenza and should be treated as general guidelines only to allow identification of the approximate resources that may be required. Click here for more information on FluSurge 2.0. Download the FluSurge 2.0 tool here.	Planning	Immediate predictions once baseline data is entered
MedCon: Pre-Event [HHS CDC]	A software tool designed to estimate the baseline medical care requirements of a displaced population (per 100,000 unit of population) with pre-existing medical conditions following a disaster (e.g., terrorism or natural phenomenon). Click here for more information on MedCon: Pre-Event. Download the MedCon Pre-Event tool here.	Planning and Response	Immediate predictions once baseline data is entered

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
<p><u>PanVax</u> [HHS CDC]</p>	<p>A Microsoft Excel-based instrument that guides jurisdictional planning and outreach efforts during pre-incident preparedness activities. The tool helps local planners understand how their vaccine providers (i.e., pharmacies, clinics, hospitals, employers, schools, points of dispensing) might contribute to the community’s vaccination response during a severe pandemic. The tool provides information regarding how to allocate pandemic vaccine doses to each provider group.</p> <p>Click here for more information on PanVax.</p> <p>Download the PanVax tool here.</p>	<p>Planning, Response, and Recovery</p>	<p>Immediate predictions once baseline data is entered</p>
<p>Maxi-Vac Programs [HHS CDC]</p>	<p>Microsoft Excel-based tools (Maxi-Vac 1.0 & Maxi-Vac Alternative) that can be used by state and local public health officials to plan large-scale smallpox vaccination clinics and optimize staff allocation to maximize the number of patients who can be vaccinated during a 12-hour shift.</p> <p>Click here for more information on Maxi-Vac Programs.</p> <p>Access the Maxi-Vac tools here.</p>	<p>Planning and Response</p>	<p>Immediate predictions once baseline data is entered</p>
<p>HHS CDC/ATSDR Social Vulnerability Index (SVI) [HHS CDC]</p>	<p>A database and map that uses U.S. census data to determine social vulnerability of a population through 15 social factor variables, such as poverty, lack of vehicle access, and crowded housing, to help local officials identify communities that may need support before, during, or after disasters.</p> <p>Click here for more information on the HHS CDC/ATSDR SVI.</p> <p>Download HHS CDC/ATSDR SVI data and documentation here.</p>	<p>Planning, Response, and Recovery</p>	<p>Immediate but dependent on census data availability</p>

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
<p>Community Assessment for Public Health Emergency Response (CASPER) [HHS CDC]</p>	<p>A type of rapid needs assessment designed to provide household-level information to public health leaders and emergency managers for their use in initiating public health action; identifying information gaps; facilitating disaster planning, response, and recovery activities; allocating resources; and assessing new or changing needs in the community. This assessment represents a cross-sectional epidemiologic design and is not to be used as a surveillance tool.</p> <p>Click here for more information on CASPER.</p> <p>Access the CASPER tool here.</p>	<p>Planning, Response, and Recovery</p>	<p>Assessment tools are available to download and use immediately</p>
<p>Point of Dispensing Simulation Program for Leveraging and Evaluating Resources (POD SimPLER) [HHS CDC]</p>	<p>A web-based software that helps public health planners estimate their current or projected population throughput capacity, identify potential processing bottlenecks, and determine resource needs when planning for MCM dispensing or administration operations during an actual emergency or training event. This software can be used to assess staffing capacity for existing sites aiming to expand or modify their operations, as a validation or training tool for locations forming vaccination or dispensing plans, or as a precursor or accompanying tool for use during full-scale exercises.</p> <p>Click here for more information on POD SimPLER.</p> <p>Access the POD SimPLER tool here.</p>	<p>Planning and Response</p>	<p>Immediate estimations once baseline data is entered</p>
<p>BioSense Platform [HHS CDC]</p>	<p>A secure, cloud-based, and integrated electronic health information platform designed for users to rapidly collect, evaluate, share, and store syndromic surveillance data through the use of standardized analytic tools as early as 24 hours after a patient’s visit to a participating facility.</p> <p>Click here for more information on the BioSense Platform.</p> <p>Contact nssp@cdc.gov for access.</p>	<p>Response and Recovery</p>	<p>24 hours after data is entered</p>

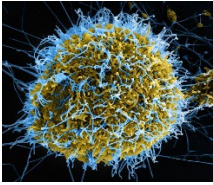
Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
Anthrax Assist [HHS CDC]	<p>A Microsoft Excel-based modeling tool that allows a user to combine initial anthrax case reports and potential effects of variable postexposure prophylaxis campaigns to project hospitalizations and casualties.</p> <p><u>Download the Anthrax Assist tool here.</u></p>	Planning and Response	Immediate estimations once baseline data is entered
National Biosurveillance Integration Center (NBIC) Reports [DHS]	<p>A center that provides daily reports on the status of diseases such as SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19), enterovirus, the flu, Middle East Respiratory Syndrome (MERS), and Ebola. NBIC also produces periodic analytic reports on special topics and events, and it enables early warning and shared situational awareness of acute biological events. NBIC offers near real-time data integration capability that pulls information from a variety of sources, performs analysis of the data, and shares the results with FSLTT stakeholders.</p> <p>Contact <u>CWMD.NBIC@hq.dhs.gov</u> for reports.</p>	Response	Daily updates, and special reports as requested
Interagency Modeling and Atmospheric Assessment Center (IMAAC) [FEMA]	<p>A center that provides federal atmospheric dispersion event characterization and consequence analysis for a full range of aerosolized CBRN threats. IMAAC can support postulated “what-if” scenario excursions.</p> <p><u>Click here for more information on IMAAC.</u></p> <p>Contact <u>imaac@fema.dhs.gov</u> for more information and call 1-877-240-1187 to request activation.</p>	Planning, Response, and Recovery	Initial IMAAC products are distributed within 30 minutes of request

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
<p>Comprehensive National Incident Management System (CNIMS) [DoD DTRA]</p>	<p>A set of tools to model regional spread of non-vector-borne infectious diseases and provide detailed, agent-based simulation of the U.S. population. Tools can model a variety of scenarios with and without planned response measures/interventions. This sophisticated epidemiological modeling capability requires a long lead time and can only be accessed through the National Guard’s Weapons of Mass Destruction (WMD) Civil Support Teams (CST) or FEMA Regional authorities.</p> <p>DTRA’s Joint Operations Center (JOC) has existing MOUs with the National Guard Bureau (to support National Guard WMD-CST) and with DHS (FEMA) (to support federal planners).</p> <p>Authorized requestors can contact the JOC (703-767-2003 or by email to DTRA-SCC-JOC@mail.mil) to request a run.</p>	<p>Planning and Response</p>	<p>Approx. 12 hours for large-scale simulation (millions of people); faster for smaller scale runs</p>
<p>PatchSim [University of Virginia, DoD DTRA]</p>	<p>A model that maps human mobility via metapopulations or “patches” of individuals in various disease states and their movement between patches (which can represent localities in areas being modeled).</p> <p>Access the PatchSim tool here.</p>	<p>Planning and Response</p>	<p>Immediate predictions once data is entered</p>
<p>EpiGrid [DOE]</p>	<p>A medium-grained, geographically resolved model that is based on differential equation–type simulations of disease and epidemic progression in the presence of various human interventions geared toward understanding the role of infection control, early versus late diagnosis, vaccination, etc. in outbreak control.</p> <p>Contact DoD DTRA for tool access and more information.</p>	<p>Planning and Response</p>	<p>Immediate predictions once data is entered</p>

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
Trade-off Tool for Sampling (TOTS) [EPA]	A web-based tool that allows users to create sampling designs and estimate the associated resource demand through an interactive, point-and-click interface for developing biological sampling plans. TOTS estimates the total time and cost necessary for implementation, which includes sampling kit preparation, conducting the sampling campaign, and lab analysis. Click here for more information on TOTS. Access TOTS here .	Planning	Immediate predictions once data is entered
Waste Storage and Staging Site Selection Tool [EPA]	An all-hazards tool that provides a framework for conducting a site selection suitability analysis to identify and rank potential locations for staging and storing waste. Click here for more information on the Waste Storage and Staging Site Selection Tool. Access the Waste Storage and Staging Site Selection Tool here.	Response and Recovery	Immediate predictions once data is entered
Incident Waste Decision Support Tool (I-WASTE DST) [EPA]	A tool that allows planners, emergency responders, and other individuals responsible for making disposal decisions to access technical information, regulations, and guidance and work through important disposal issues to assure safe and efficient removal, transport, treatment, and/or disposal of debris and waste materials. Waste Materials Estimator generates the order of magnitude estimates for the types and quantities of materials that may require decontamination and/or disposal from one or more structure types. Click here for more information on I-WASTE DST.	Planning, Response and Recovery	Immediate predictions once data is entered
Waste Management Planning (WMP) Tool [EPA]	A tool that assists emergency managers and planners in creating or updating a comprehensive plan for managing waste generated from man-made and natural disasters. The tool walks the user through the process of developing and implementing a plan. Click here for more information on the WMP Tool.	Planning	Immediate predictions once data is entered

Tool	Capabilities	Support Type	Timeline
<p>Waste Estimation Support Tool (WEST) [EPA]</p>	<p>A tool that assists emergency planners, responders, and decision makers in analyzing remediation strategies and associated waste management impacts of biological and radiological remediation. The tool provides first order magnitude estimates of waste to illuminate how waste estimates change among decontamination/remediation approaches considered, and it uses geospatial data to assist in defining the extent of contamination in specified areas.</p> <p>Click here for more information on WEST.</p> <p>Access WEST here.</p>	<p>Response and Recovery</p>	<p>Immediate predictions once data is entered</p>
<p>Suite for Automated Global Electronic bioSurveillance (SAGES) [John Hopkins Applied Physics Laboratory]</p>	<p>A collection of modular, flexible, freely available software tools for electronic disease surveillance in resource-limited settings. Builds upon the DoD-sponsored Electronic Surveillance System for Early Notification of Community-based Epidemics (ESSENCE) syndromic surveillance system. Detects outbreaks and alerts public health personnel. Applies syndrome definitions, statistical algorithms to identify possible outbreaks in medical encounter data.</p> <p>Click here for more information on SAGES.</p> <p>Download the SAGES tool here.</p>	<p>Response</p>	<p>Once system is set up and dashboard configuration established, updates are continuous as additional data is collected</p>

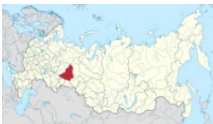
Photo Credits



Credit: National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID)



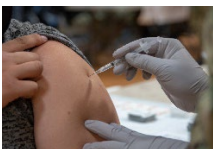
Credit: Charles E. Spirtos



Credit: Stasyan117



Credit: Janice Haney Carr



Credit: Mass Communication Specialist 2nd Class Erwin Jacob V. Miciano



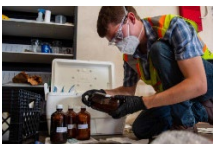
Credit: David Jennings



Credit: Jaysin Trevino



Credit: Petty Officer 2nd Class MarQueon Tramble



Credit: Petty Officer 2nd Class MarQueon Tramble



Credit: Capt. Brendan Mackie



Credit: Airman 1st Class Brooke Moede



Credit: CDC/ Strategic National Stockpile Communications Team



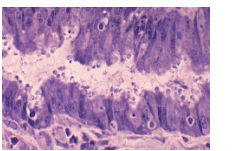
Credit: Charles County Maryland



Credit: FDA



Credit: HHS CDC/Rob Taylor



Credit: CDC/Dr. Edwin P. Ewing, Jr



Credit: Jane Kelly



Credit: Susan Ellis



Credit: USDA



Credit: USDA



Credit: Mpi34/MediaPunch/IPX/AP



Credit: Lance Cpl. Kerstin Roberts



Credit: Animaldecon.com



Credit: Animaldecon.com



Credit: Shutterstock



Credit: Cynthia Griggs

Appendix A: Examples of National-Level Notification Modalities

Information-Sharing Process	Description
Biological Incident Notification and Assessment (BINA) Protocol	Provides a consistent means for NSC staff to convene agencies pursuant to the interagency policy process outlined in National Security Memorandum (NSM)-2. This process allows the federal government the ability to rapidly develop a common understanding of an evolving, potentially high-consequence biological incident or threat, allowing for rapid decision-making and coordinated action among agencies and as directed by the President.
BioWatch National Conference Call	Occurs within 2 hours of the BioWatch Actionable Result declaration and after the local jurisdictional BioWatch Advisory Committee (BAC) call. It begins with a summary of laboratory testing data and the current local situation by the BAC chair and other local public health, law enforcement, and emergency management representatives to provide situational awareness of follow-on activities and potential requests for assistance from other federal agencies (DHS, HHS CDC, DOJ FBI, EPA, or the Strategic National Stockpile [SNS]). It also provides information regarding the next conference call time.
National Biosurveillance Integration System (NBIS) Protocol	Mechanism to bring federal NBIS partners together on a short-notice teleconference to share information on a potentially significant biological incident. It can be initiated at the request of any NBIS partner and is an example of a unique capability of the National Biosurveillance Integration Center (NBIC) that helps enable national biosurveillance integration. The protocol is activated when a situation meets one or more of the threshold criteria and is requested by an NBIS agency.
<u>Health Alert Network (HAN)</u>	The HHS CDC's primary method of sharing public health information with public information officers, federal and SLTT-area public health practitioners, clinicians, and public health laboratories. There are jurisdictional HAN programs from 50 states, the District of Columbia, and eight territories, as well as the metropolitan areas of Chicago, Los Angeles, and New York City.
<u>Epidemic Information Exchange (Epi-X)</u>	A web-based communications solution for public health professionals. Through Epi-X, HHS CDC officials, state and local health departments, poison control centers, and other public health professionals can access and share preliminary health surveillance information—quickly and securely. Users can also be actively notified of breaking health events as they occur. Key features of Epi-X include unparalleled scientific and editorial support, controlled user access, digital credentials and authentication, rapid outbreak reporting, and peer-to-peer consultation.
<u>Clinician Outreach and Communication Activity (COCA)</u>	Provides timely, accurate, and credible information to clinicians related to emergency preparedness and response and emerging public health threats. COCA fosters partnerships with national clinician organizations to strengthen information-sharing networks before, during, and after a public health emergency.

Information-Sharing Process	Description
HHS Public Affairs Conference Line (PACL)	Provides a conference line to allow telephone connectivity for public affairs staff supporting Emergency Support Function (ESF) #8. This conference line allows HHS public affairs personnel to work from dispersed sites during the crisis while receiving guidance or direction or providing information to those who need it.
National Incident Coordination Conference Line (NICCL)	While DHS traditionally leads the NICCL for transmission and exchange of critical and timely incident information among federal authorities, HHS, when needed, can coordinate communications information related to the public health and medical aspects of a response, particularly in a public health-specific emergency such as a pandemic disease. DHS coordinates similar processes for private and state entities through the Private Sector Incident Coordination Conference Line (PICCL) and State Incident Coordination Conference Line (SICCL), respectively.
<u>National Public Health Information Coalition (NPHIC)</u>	Leverages a network of state and local public health communicators to exchange information and facilitate consistent messaging and communication activities between federal and SLTT-area governments regarding the emergency and its impact on health.
<u>National Animal Health Laboratory Network (NAHLN)</u>	A nationally coordinated network and partnership of federal, state, and university-associated animal health laboratories. NAHLN veterinary diagnostic laboratories provide animal health diagnostic testing to detect biological threats to the nation's food animals, thus protecting animal health, public health, and the nation's food supply. These laboratories also provide the capability to diagnose both endemic and foreign high-consequence livestock pathogens in animals and environmental samples and are likely to be the first-line laboratories for recognition of an intentionally or accidentally introduced agent in animals. The National Veterinary Services Laboratories (NVSL) serve as the nation's reference laboratories for both the NAHLN and United States Department of Agriculture (USDA).
<u>National Veterinary Services Laboratories (NVSL)</u>	Located in Ames, Iowa, and Plum Island, New York, the NVSL helps safeguard U.S. animal health and contributes to public health by ensuring that timely and accurate laboratory support is provided via its nationwide animal-health diagnostic system. NVSL provides diagnostic services, reagents, and training in world-class facilities; facilitates response to animal health emergencies; manages NAHLN; serves as an international reference laboratory; and maintains a well-trained and responsive staff.
<u>National Animal Health Monitoring System (NAHMS)</u>	Collects, analyzes, and disseminates data on animal health, management, and productivity across the U.S. The NAHMS team also conducts national studies on the health and health management of U.S. domestic livestock populations to meet the information needs of the industries associated with these commodities, as identified by people within those industries.

Information-Sharing Process	Description
<p><u>National Animal Health Surveillance System (NAHSS)</u></p>	<p>An interdisciplinary network of partners working together to protect animal health and promote trade through surveillance, control, and prevention of foreign, emerging, zoonotic, and endemic diseases. The NAHSS infrastructure also provides the tools necessary to detect chemical or environmental agents that could affect animal health.</p>
<p><u>National Outbreak Reporting System (NORS)</u></p>	<p>A web-based platform used by SLTT health departments in the U.S. to report all waterborne and foodborne disease outbreaks and enteric disease outbreaks transmitted by contact with environmental sources, infected persons or animals, or unknown modes of transmission to HHS CDC.</p>

Initial notifications related to intentional biological threats and incidents, including those within the scope of National Security Presidential Memorandum (NSPM) - 36, Guidelines for USG Interagency Response to Terrorist Threats or Incidents in the United States and Overseas (January 19, 2021), are further outlined and referenced in the Branch 1 Plan (Intentional Biological Incidents) to the BIA (currently under revision).



Figure 44: Common operating picture for biological incidents

Appendix B: Examples of a Biological Pathogen Detection, Verification, and Information Sharing

Information Sources	Examples of Initial Intelligence Received	Verification Process	Methods of Information Sharing
Individual practitioner or healthcare facility lab	Suspected or confirmed sentinel case reported through local public health	Private sector, Laboratory Response Network (LRN), or HHS CDC laboratory confirmation may be required	Health Alert Network (HAN), National Public Health Information Coalition (NPHIC), Clinician Outreach and Communication Activity (COCA)
Individual facility, local or state health department surveillance systems	Influx of patients with similar symptoms indicating potential new disease pathogen	Private sector, LRN, or HHS CDC laboratory confirmation may be required Epidemiologic investigation to confirm patterns of similarity	HAN, National Incident Coordination Conference Line (NICCL), COCA, National Poison Data System
Identification of novel or atypical pathogen in FSLTT, or private sector laboratory	Individual not originally suspected; “unexpected” diagnosis received through secondary testing	Private sector, LRN, or HHS CDC laboratory confirmation may be required	HAN, COCA, NPHIC, Public Affairs Conference Line (PACL), NBIS Protocol
Novel emerging infection reported under IHR from overseas source	New pathogen or pathogen of concern evolving in a situation in which spread to U.S. is possible	Multiple international partners as well as international assistance provided by U.S. Government (USG)	HAN, COCA, NPHIC, PACL, National Biosurveillance Integration System (NBIS) Protocol
Zoonotic outbreak identified by private sector, SLTT, or federal providers or laboratories	Zoonotic pathogen identified in an animal population with potential for causing human disease	USDA, HHS CDC, SLTT, National Animal Health Laboratory Network (NAHLN), or private sector laboratory confirm all possible	HAN, COCA, NPHIC, PACL, NBIS Protocol
Law enforcement intelligence	Credible threat of deployment of pathogen of concern	Law enforcement investigations paired with public health expertise	Law Enforcement Sensitive (LES) Bulletin, NSC Process, NICCL

Information Sources	Examples of Initial Intelligence Received	Verification Process	Methods of Information Sharing
Public media	Announced release of pathogen of concern	Multiple entities/processes at various levels potentially involved	NSC Process, NICCL, follow-on HAN, NPHIC, PACL

Appendix C: Funding Sources for Stafford and Non-Stafford Incidents

	Types of Funding	Administered by	Description
Public Health Emergency Fund (PHEF)	Supplemental appropriations can be sought from Congress	HHS	The PHEF is a no-year fund at the U.S. Treasury to provide funding in the event of a public health emergency. The PHEF has no balance and can only be accessed in a declared public health emergency. In addition, there are no other immediate and flexible no-year funding sources available to ensure a timely response to an urgent event and no such fund for an event that does not meet the threshold for a public health emergency declaration.
Non-Stafford Act	Appropriated Funds	Each Department/ Agency	As established by Congress. (Most federal agencies do not have disaster response appropriations and specific guidance from agency financial management offices should be obtained).
Non-Stafford Act	Economy Act, 31 U.S.C. 1535-1536: Federal-to-Federal	DHS	A federal entity with primary responsibility and statutory authority for handling an incident (i.e., the requesting agency) that needs support beyond its normal operations may request DHS coordination and facilitation through the National Response Framework (NRF).
Non-Stafford Act	Public Health Emergency Preparedness (PHEP) Cooperative Agreement	HHS CDC	HHS CDC provides SLTTs with funding and technical assistance to build public health preparedness and response capabilities nationwide. PHEP Cooperative Agreement provides funding to 50 states, four cities, and eight U.S. territories and freely associated states.
Stafford Act	Pandemic Coverage: (Emergency Assistance for Human Influenza Pandemic Disaster Assistance Policy 9523.17. November 25, 2009)	FEMA	Direct federal assistance is available through Public Assistance grants for Stafford Act declarations related to pandemic influenza. Assistance provided by FEMA under the Stafford Act in response to a pandemic influenza declaration may not duplicate assistance provided or available under the authority of other federal agencies, including HHS.

	Types of Funding	Administered by	Description
Stafford Act	Mutual Aid Agreements for Public Assistance and Fire Management Assistance Disaster Assistance Policy 9523.6. August 13, 2007	FEMA	FEMA will reimburse for services provided through written mutual aid agreements, such as the Emergency Management Assistance Compact (EMAC), for aid provided to states where there has been a Presidential declaration, the activities and costs directly relate to the incident and eligible work, and costs are reasonable.
Stafford Act	Disaster Relief Fund (Robert T. Stafford Relief and Emergency Assistance Act of 1988)	FEMA	Disaster relief funding limits established by Congress.

Appendix D: Support Functions

Emergency Support Functions (ESFs)

ESFs provide the structure for coordinating federal interagency support for a federal response to an incident. ESFs serve as a means of grouping functions that provide federal support to states and federal-to-federal support, both for Stafford Act declared disasters and emergencies and for non-Stafford Act incidents.

Emergency Support Function	Purpose
<u>ESF #1 – Transportation</u>	Provides support by assisting SLTT, insular area, federal governmental entities, voluntary organizations, non-governmental organizations (NGOs), and the private sector in the management of transportation systems and infrastructure during domestic threats or in response to actual or potential incidents.
<u>ESF #2 – Communications</u>	Supports the restoration of communications infrastructure, coordinates communications support to response efforts, facilitates the delivery of information to emergency management decision makers, and assists in the stabilization and reestablishment of systems and applications during incidents.
<u>ESF #3 – Public Works and Engineering</u>	Coordinates and organizes the resources of the federal government to facilitate the delivery of multiple core capabilities.
<u>ESF #4 – Firefighting</u>	Provides federal support for the detection and suppression of wildland, rural, and urban fires resulting from, or occurring coincidentally with, an all-hazard incident requiring a coordinated national response for assistance.
<u>ESF #5 – Information and Planning</u>	Collects, analyzes, processes, and disseminates information about a potential or actual incident, and conducts deliberate and crisis action planning activities to facilitate the overall activities in providing assistance to the whole community.
<u>ESF #6 – Mass Care, Emergency Assistance, Temporary Housing, and Human Services</u>	Coordinates and provides life-sustaining resources, essential services, and statutory programs when the needs of disaster survivors exceed SLTT and insular area government capabilities.
<u>ESF #7 – Logistics</u>	Integrates whole community logistics incident planning and support for timely and efficient delivery of supplies, equipment, services, and facilities. It also facilitates comprehensive logistics planning, technical assistance, training, education, exercise, incident response, and sustainment that leverage the capability and resources of federal logistics partners, public and private stakeholders, and NGOs in support of both responders and disaster survivors.

Emergency Support Function	Purpose
<u>ESF #8 – Public Health and Medical Services</u>	Provides the mechanism for federal assistance to supplement SLTT and insular area resources in response to a disaster, emergency, or incident that may lead to a public health, medical, behavioral, or human service emergency, including those that have international implications.
<u>ESF #9 – Search and Rescue (SAR)</u>	Deploys federal SAR resources to provide lifesaving assistance to SLTT and insular area authorities, including local SAR coordinators and mission coordinators, when there is an actual or anticipated request for federal SAR assistance.
<u>ESF #10 – Oil and Hazardous Materials Response</u>	Provides federal support in response to an actual or potential discharge and/or release of oil or hazardous materials when activated.
<u>ESF #11 – Agriculture and Natural Resources</u>	Organizes and coordinates federal support for the protection of the nation’s agricultural and natural and cultural resources during national emergencies. ESF #11 works during actual and potential incidents to provide nutrition assistance; respond to animal and agricultural health issues; provide technical expertise, coordination, and support of animal and agricultural emergency management; ensure the safety and defense of the nation’s supply of meat, poultry, and processed egg products; and ensure the protection of natural and cultural resources and historic properties.
<u>ESF #12 – Energy</u>	Provides support to the DHS by assisting FSLTT government entities, NGOs, and the private sector through coordination of government capabilities, services, technical assistance, and engineering expertise during disasters and incidents that require a coordinated federal response. The term “energy” includes producing, storing, refining, transporting, generating, transmitting, conserving, building, distributing, maintaining, and controlling energy systems and system components.
<u>ESF #13 – Public Safety and Security</u>	Provides federal public safety and security assistance to FSLTT organizations overwhelmed by the results of an actual or anticipated natural/man-made disaster or an act of terrorism.
<u>ESF #14 – Cross-Sector Business and Infrastructure</u>	Supports the coordination of cross-sector operations, including stabilization of key supply chains and community lifelines, among infrastructure owners and operators, businesses, and their government partners.
<u>ESF #15 – External Affairs</u>	Provides accurate, coordinated, timely, and accessible information to affected audiences, including governments, media, the private sector, and the local populace, including children; those with disabilities and others with access and functional needs; and individuals with limited English proficiency.

Recovery Support Functions (RSFs)

In the recovery phase of incident management, the RSFs support local governments by facilitating problem solving, improving access to resources, and fostering coordination among state and federal agencies, non-governmental partners, and stakeholders.

Recovery Support Function	Coordinating Agency	Purpose
<u>Community Planning and Capacity Building (CPCB)</u>	FEMA	Supports the needs of impacted SLTT governments' ability to plan for, engage the community, and build capacity through planning technical assistance, program support, or funding for planning and capacity building-related initiatives.
<u>Economic</u>	U.S. Department of Commerce (DOC)	Supports SLTT governments and the private sector to sustain and/or rebuild businesses, foster employment, and develop economic opportunities that result in sustainable and economically resilient communities after an incident.
<u>Health and Social Services</u>	HHS	Supports SLTT recovery efforts to address public health, healthcare facilities and coalitions, and essential social services needs for at-risk and vulnerable children, individuals, and families displaced by an incident or disaster.
<u>Housing</u>	U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD)	Coordinates and facilitates the delivery of federal resources to implement housing solutions supporting the needs of the whole community, contributing to sustainability and resilience.
<u>Infrastructure Systems</u>	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)	Facilitates the restoration of infrastructure systems and services through funding and technical assistance to support a viable, sustainable community and improve resilience to and protection from future hazards.
<u>Natural & Cultural Resources</u>	U.S. Department of Interior (DOI)	Facilitates the integration of federal capabilities to support the protection of natural and cultural resources and historic properties through appropriate response and recovery actions to preserve, conserve, rehabilitate, and restore according to post-disaster community priorities and in compliance with applicable environmental and historical preservation laws and executive orders.

Appendix E: Federal Assets for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear (CBRN) Incidents

Department of Homeland Security Assets for CBRN Incidents

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
<u>Incident Management Assistance Teams (IMAT)</u>	FEMA	Provide on-scene incident command capabilities and identify and satisfy initial requirements for federal assistance. Serve in core responsibilities in Incident Command System (ICS) structure for federal assistance to local disasters and for federally led incidents.
<u>Urban Search & Rescue (US&R) Teams</u>	FEMA	Provide specialized assistance locating and rescuing victims after buildings or other structures collapse, or in response to natural hazards such as landslides or earthquakes.
<u>Consequence Management Coordination Unit (CMCU)</u>	FEMA	Ensures information sharing and coordination between DOJ FBI-led Protection and Prevention operations and FEMA-coordinated consequence management Response operations.
<u>Visible Intermodal Prevention and Response (VIPR) Teams</u>	Transportation Security Administration (TSA)	Deploys transportation security assets (e.g., security inspectors, air marshals, and canine teams) to specific locations and events as needed.
<u>Protective Security Advisors (PSAs)</u>	DHS Cybersecurity and Infrastructure Security Agency (CISA)	Anticipate and assess damage to the area’s critical infrastructure assets, including assessing the potential for cascading effects due to interdependencies among those assets. Also help prioritize re-entry and recovery efforts related to critical infrastructure.
<u>National Response System (NRS)</u>	U.S. Coast Guard (USCG) and EPA	Coordinates federal actions and deployment of federal assets to respond to discharges of oil into U.S. waters and adjoining shorelines, and releases of hazardous substances, pollutants, or contaminants into the environment.

Department of Health and Human Services Assets for CBRN Incidents

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
<u>U.S. Public Health Service Commissioned Corps</u>	Assistant Secretary for Health (ASH)	Provides medical and public health workforce surge capacity in response to mass casualty incidents and other public health emergencies.
<u>Strategic National Stockpile (SNS)</u>	HHS ASPR	Provides medicine and medical supplies when a public health emergency has overwhelmed local supplies. Also contains unique supplies to respond to certain CBRN agents.
<u>International Medical Surgical Response Team (IMSURT)</u>	HHS ASPR, National Disaster Medical System (NDMS)	Deployed at the request of the Department of State (DOS) to treat U.S. citizens injured as a result of terrorism, consisting of 50 members with flexible and mobile equipment, supplies, and pharmaceuticals.
<u>National Veterinary Response Team (NVRT)</u>	HHS ASPR, NDMS	Provides expert veterinary care treating ill or injured pets, companion animals, service animals, working animals (including security animals), laboratory animals, and livestock impacted by natural and technological disasters, acts of terrorism, disease outbreaks, and during certain national special security events. NVRTs also provide veterinary health screening at points of embarkation and debarkation for any animals and conduct environmental and zoonotic disease assessments.
<u>Disaster Medical Assistance Team (DMAT)</u>	HHS ASPR, NDMS	Provides medical care at a fixed or temporary medical care site. Special teams include pharmacy, nurse, burn, pediatric, crush, and mental health.
<u>Disaster Mortuary Operational Response Team (DMORT)</u>	HHS ASPR, NDMS	Provides temporary morgue facilities, victim identification, forensic dental pathology, forensic anthropology, processing, preparation and disposition of remains.
<u>National Medical Response Team (NMRT)</u>	HHS ASPR, NDMS	Provides mass decontamination, medical triage, and primary and secondary medical care to stabilize victims for transportation to tertiary care facilities in a hazardous material environment.
<u>Trauma and Critical Care Teams (TCCTs)</u>	HHS ASPR, NDMS	Provide critical, operative, and emergency care to help people in the wake of natural and man-made disasters and public health emergencies. TCCT members are medical professionals deployed at the request of local authorities to supplement FSLTT resources.

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
<u>Laboratory Response Network (LRN)</u>	HHS CDC	A network of laboratories that can respond to biological and chemical threats and other public health emergencies. The network consists of federal, state, and local public health; military; food testing; environmental; veterinary; and international laboratories.
<u>Victim Information Center (VIC) Teams</u>	HHS ASPR	Provide support to local authorities in the aftermath of a natural or man-made disaster or public health emergency by helping to identify the victims and serving as a liaison to the victims' families or other responsible parties in support of another NDMS team.

Department of Defense Assets for CBRN Incidents

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
<u>Planning & Response Teams (PRTs)</u>	United States Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)	Provide ice, water, power, debris removal, temporary housing, temporary roofing, and structural safety assessments.
<u>249th Engineer Battalion (Prime Power)</u>	USACE	Provides operational assistance in power generation and distribution for facilities like hospitals, shelters, water and sewer facilities, and police and fire stations.
<u>Weapons of Mass Destruction Civil Support Team (WMD-CST)</u>	State/Territory National Guards	Comprised of 22-person teams, prepared to deploy in three hours to provide rapid detection, assessment, and identification of hazardous materials. There are 57 WMD-CSTs located in each state, U.S. territory, and Washington, D.C. (with two in California, Florida, and New York).
<u>CBRN Enhanced Response Force Package (CERFP)</u>	State/Territory National Guards	Provides search & recovery, decontamination, and emergency medical care. Comprised of 17 units of 197 personnel each, located throughout the country and prepared to deploy in 6 hours.
<u>Homeland Response Force (HRF)</u>	State/Territory National Guards	Provides command & control, search & extraction, decontamination, emergency medical care, and casualty assistance. Comprised of 10 units of 577 personnel each, located throughout the country and prepared to deploy in 6–12 hours.

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
<u>Defense CBRN Response Force (DCRF)</u>	United States Army North (ARNORTH)	Provides command & control, CBRN assessment, search & rescue, decontamination, emergency medical care, medical and surgical capability, physical security, engineering, logistics, transportation, air/ground medical evacuation, and aviation lift. Deploys in two force packages (FP). FP-1 is 2,100 personnel prepared to deploy in 24 hours. FP-2 is 3,100 personnel prepared to deploy in 48 hours.
<u>Command & Control CBRN Response Element - Alpha and Bravo (C2CRE-A and C2CRE-B)</u>	ARNORTH	Provide command & control, CBRN assessment, search & rescue, decontamination, emergency medical care, physical security, engineering, logistics, and transportation. Comprised of two units of 1,500 personnel each prepared to deploy in 96 hours.

Other Federal Assets for CBRN Incidents

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
<u>Domestic Emergency Support Team (DEST)</u>	DOJ FBI	Rapidly deployable team of interagency CBRN experts that provide decision-making, contingency planning and technical support, pre-incident consequence management, and state and local engagement.
<u>Forest Service (FS) Firefighting Assets</u>	USDA FS	Provide response assistance through firefighting support, fire suppression and assistance planning, command and control support, emergency road clearing, logistics facility support, radio/communications system support, and cache support for mass care shelters.
<u>National Transportation Safety Board (NTSB) Transportation Disaster Assistance Division (TDA)</u>	NTSB TDA	Provides assistance to families of passengers involved in major aviation and passenger rail disasters.

Asset	Dept./Agency	Description
Emergency Communications and Outreach Team (ECOT)	EPA	Comprised of community involvement and public affairs specialists who have experience in emergency and removal response that can support public outreach for extended periods of time. ECOT has the ability to set up and/or function in a Joint Information Center (JIC), work with the media, address public inquiries and community involvement issues, develop and implement communication strategies, and craft press releases and fact sheets.
Advisory Team for Environment, Food, and Health (A-Team)	EPA/USDA/HHS CDC/HHS FDA	Develops recommendations on environmental, food, health, and animal health matters.
<u>National Veterinary Services Laboratories (NVSL)</u>	USDA Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service (APHIS)	Safeguard U.S. animal health and contribute to public health by ensuring that timely and accurate laboratory support is provided by their nationwide animal-health diagnostic system.
<u>National Animal Health Laboratory Network (NAHLN)</u>	USDA APHIS	Provides animal health diagnostic testing to detect biological threats to the nation's food animals, thus protecting animal health, public health, and the nation's food supply.
<u>Integrated Consortium of Laboratory Networks (ICLN)</u>	DHS Countering Weapons of Mass Destruction Office (CWMD)	Coordinates federally sponsored analytical laboratory services for CBRN incidents. Provides timely, credible, and interpretable data in support of surveillance, early detection, and effective consequence management.

Appendix F: Acronym List

ACS	Alternate Care Sites
APHIS	Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service
ASPR	Assistant Secretary for Preparedness and Response
BIA	Biological Incident Annex
CBRN	Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDP	Center for Domestic Preparedness
CERC	Crisis and Emergency Risk Communication
COCA	Clinician Outreach and Communication Activity
COG	Continuity of Government
COOP	Continuity of Operations
CONOPS	Concept of Operations
COVID-19	Coronavirus disease 2019
CPCB	Community Planning and Capacity Building
CRC	Community Reception Center
DHS	Department of Homeland Security
DMATs	Disaster Medical Assistance Teams
DMORTs	Disaster Mortuary Operational Response Teams
DoD	Department of Defense
DOI	Department of the Interior
DOJ	Department of Justice
DOS	Department of State
DPA	Defense Production Act

DTRA	Defense Threat Reduction Agency
EA	External Affairs
EDI	Emerging Disease Incident
EMAC	Emergency Management Assistance Compact
EMI	Emergency Management Institute
EMS	Emergency Medical Services
EPA	Environmental Protection Agency
Epi-Aid	Epidemiologic Assistance
ESF	Emergency Support Function
EVD	Ebola Virus Disease
FAIA	Food and Agriculture Incident Annex
FBI	Federal Bureau of Investigation
FDA	Food and Drug Administration
FEMA	Federal Emergency Management Agency
FIOP	Federal Interagency Operational Plan
FMS	Federal Medical Station
FNS	Food and Nutrition Service
FSLTT	Federal, state, local, tribal, territorial
GIS	Geographic Information System
HAZMAT	Hazardous Materials
HCC	Healthcare coalitions
HHS	Department of Health and Human Services
HMR	Hazardous Materials Regulation
HPAC	Hazard Prediction and Assessment Capability

HPP	Hospital Preparedness Program
IC	Incident Command
ICLN	Integrated Consortium of Laboratory Networks
ICS	Incident Command System
IHR	International Health Regulations
IMAAC	Interagency Modeling and Atmospheric Assessment Center
IMATS	Inventory Management and Tracking System
IPAWS	Integrated Public Alert and Warning System
JIC	Joint Information Center
JOC	Joint Operations Center
KPF	Key Planning Factor
LFA	Lead Federal Agency
LRN	Laboratory Response Network
LRN-B	Laboratory Response Network for Biological Threats
MCMs	Medical Countermeasures
MOA	Memorandum of Agreement
MoDI	Modeling and Data Inventory
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
NAHEMS	National Animal Health Emergency Management System
NAHLN	National Animal Health Laboratory Network
NASAAEP	National Alliance of State Animal and Agricultural Emergency Programs
NBIC	National Biosurveillance Integration Center
NCHRP	National Cooperative Highway Research Program
NCR	Natural and Cultural Resources

NDMS	National Disaster Medical System
NDRF	National Disaster Recovery Framework
NGO	Non-Governmental Organization
NIH	National Institutes of Health
NMRT	National Medical Response Team
NORS	National Outbreak Reporting System
NPIs	Non-Pharmaceutical Interventions
NRF	National Response Framework
NRS	National Response System
NSC	National Security Council
NVRT	National Veterinary Response Team
NVSL	National Veterinary Services Laboratories
OSC	On-Scene Coordinators
PAHPAIA	Pandemic and All-Hazards Preparedness and Advancing Innovation Act
PETS	Pets Evacuation and Transportation Standards
PHEF	Public Health Emergency Fund
PHEIC	Public Health Emergency of International Concern
PHEP	Public Health Emergency Preparedness
PHSA	Public Health Services Act
PIO	Public Information Officer
POD	Point of Dispensing
PPD	Presidential Policy Directive
PPE	Personal Protective Equipment
PREP Act	Public Health Readiness and Emergency Preparedness Act

RedDOG	Readiness and Deployment Operations Group
RSF	Recovery Support Function
SARS	Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome
SBA	Small Business Administration
SLTT	State, local, tribal, territorial
SME	Subject matter expert
SNS	Strategic National Stockpile
SRO	Senior Response Official
Stafford Act	Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act
TRACIE	Technical Resources, Assistance Center, and Information Exchange
TRB	Transportation Research Board
UCG	Unified Coordination Group
U.S.	United States
USACE	United States Army Corps of Engineers
USDA	U.S. Department of Agriculture
USPS	U.S. Postal Service
USSR	Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
VIC	Victim Information Center
VOAD	Voluntary Organizations Active in Disasters
VS	Veterinary Services
WEA	Wireless Emergency Alert
WHO	World Health Organization
WNV	West Nile Virus

Appendix G: Glossary of Terms

Active Surveillance: Involves health departments proactively contacting healthcare providers or laboratories requesting information about diseases.

Aerosol: Fine liquid or solid particles suspended in a gas.

Ambulatory: Persons able to understand directions, talk, and walk unassisted.

Antibiotic: Medicine that inhibits the growth of or destroys microorganisms.

Asymptomatic: Producing or showing no symptoms of a disease.

Bacteria: Microscopic living organisms, usually one-celled organisms.

Biological Incident: Occurrence of cases or outbreaks involving a biological pathogen that affects people, regardless of whether it is naturally occurring or deliberately caused.

BioWatch: System designed to detect the presence of airborne biological agents.

Category A Biologic Agent: Organisms/biological agents that pose the highest risk to national security and public health because they (1) can be easily disseminated or transmitted from person to person, (2) result in high mortality rates and have the potential for major public health impact, (3) might cause public panic and social disruption, and (4) require special action for public health preparedness.

Category B Biologic Agent: Second highest priority organisms/biological agents that (1) are moderately easy to disseminate, (2) result in moderate morbidity rates and low mortality rates, and (3) require specific enhancements for diagnostic capacity and enhanced disease surveillance.

Category C Biologic Agent: Third highest priority and include emerging pathogens that could be engineered for mass dissemination in the future because of (1) availability, (2) ease of production and dissemination, and (3) potential for high morbidity and mortality rates and major health impact.

Causative Agent: Biological pathogen that causes a disease such as a virus, parasite, fungus, or bacterium.

Communicable Disease: Infectious disease that is transmissible by contact with infected individuals or their bodily discharges or fluids (such as respiratory droplets, blood, or semen), by contact with contaminated surfaces or objects (fomites), by ingestion of contaminated water, or by direct or indirect contact with disease vectors (such as mosquitoes, fleas, or mice).

Community NPIs: Strategies and policies that communities and organizations can implement to help slow the spread of illness during an infectious disease outbreak (e.g., social distancing and temporary closing of centers).

Community Reception Centers (CRCs): Local, temporary response strategy for conducting population monitoring in response to an emergency with administrative and allied healthcare assistants and volunteers responsible for emergency care delivery to “all hazards” survivors.

Contact Tracing: Identification and diagnosis of people who may have come into contact with an infected person.

Contagious: Capable of being transmitted by bodily contact with an infected person or object.

Contaminated: Presence of an infectious agent on a body surface, the environment, also on or in clothes, bedding, toys, surgical instruments or dressings, or other inanimate articles or substances including water, milk, and other food.

Continuity of Government (COG): Coordinated effort within each of the executive, legislative, and judicial branches to ensure that governance and essential functions continue to be performed before, during, and after an emergency.

Continuity of Operations (COOP): Ensures an individual organization can continue to perform its essential functions, provide essential services, and deliver core capabilities during a disruption to routine operations.

Critical Infrastructure: Systems and assets, whether physical or virtual, so vital that the incapacity or destruction of such may have a debilitating impact on the security, economy, public health or safety, environment, or any combination of those matters, across any federal, state, tribal, territorial, or local jurisdiction.

Decontamination: Process of reducing or removing a hazard from the environment, property, or life form through physical removal or neutralization.

Detection: Clinical or laboratory discovery of a biological pathogen.

Disability: Physical or mental impairment that substantially limits one or more major life activity.

Disease: Sickness, illness, or loss of health.

Disease Surveillance: Epidemiological practice to monitor the spread of disease in people and/or animals in order to establish patterns of progression.

Emergency Declaration: Declared by the President to supplement state and local or Indian tribal government efforts in providing emergency services, such as the protection of lives, property, public health, and safety, or to lessen or avert the threat of a catastrophe in any part of the United States.

Emergency Support Functions (ESFs): Structure for coordinating federal interagency support for response to an incident. Grouping of functions that provide federal support to states and federal-to-federal support, both for Stafford Act declared disasters and emergencies and for non-Stafford Act incidents.

Emergency Use Authorization: Mechanism to facilitate the availability and use of MCMs, including vaccines, during public health emergencies.

Endemic: Regularly found among a certain population or in a certain area.

Engineering Controls: Protect workers by removing hazardous conditions or by placing barriers between the worker and the hazard.

Environmental NPIs: Establishment of barriers or specialized equipment to protect persons from biological hazards. These also include routine surface cleaning that helps to eliminate pathogens from frequently touched surfaces and objects in homes, childcare facilities, schools, workplaces, and other settings where people regularly gather.

Environmental Persistence: Length of time a contaminant remains in the environment.

Epi-Aid: Mechanism for public health authorities to request short-term epidemiologic assistance from HHS CDC to respond to an urgent public health problem.

Epidemiological Investigation: Investigation of an urgent public health problem such as infectious or non-communicable disease outbreaks, unexplained illnesses, or natural or man-made disasters.

Epidemiologist: Investigator who studies the occurrence of disease or other health-related conditions, states, or events in specified populations; one who practices epidemiology; the control of disease is advised by the epidemiologist based on his/her investigation.

Exposed: Unprotected contact to an infectious agent, which may or may not develop disease.

Exposure: Contact with infectious agents (bacteria or viruses) in a manner that promotes transmission and increases the likelihood of disease.

Fatality Management: Coordination of several organizations (e.g., law enforcement, healthcare, emergency management, medical examiner, etc.) to ensure the proper recovery, handling, identification, transportation, tracking, storage, and disposal of human remains.

Hazardous Waste: Waste with properties that make it dangerous or capable of having a harmful effect on human health, animals, plants, or the environment.

Healthcare Coalitions (HCCs): Group of individual healthcare and response organizations (e.g., hospitals, EMS, emergency management organizations, and public health agencies) in a defined geographic location that play a critical role in developing healthcare system preparedness and response capabilities.

Household Pet: A domesticated animal, such as a dog, cat, bird, rabbit, rodent, or turtle, that is traditionally kept in the home for pleasure rather than for commercial purposes, can travel in commercial carriers, and can be housed in temporary facilities. Household pets do not include

reptiles (except turtles), amphibians, fish, insects/arachnids, farm animals (including horses), and animals kept for racing purposes.

Immunocompromised: Having an impaired immune system.

Incubation Period: Time between exposure to an infectious agent and the appearance of the first symptoms.

Infectious Agents: Organisms capable of spreading disease (e.g., bacteria or viruses).

Infectious Disease: Disease caused by a microorganism and therefore potentially infinitely transferable to new individuals (may or may not be communicable).

Isolation: Physical separation of individuals with a contagious infectious illness from healthy individuals who have not been exposed to the biological agent. Isolation can be implemented at home or in a separate room in a healthcare setting depending on the specific nature of the biological incident.

Medical Countermeasures (MCMs): Regulated pharmaceutical products and interventions (e.g., prophylaxes, therapeutics, diagnostic tests, personal protective equipment) used to prevent, mitigate, or treat adverse health effects of chemical, biological, radiological, or nuclear incidents.

Method of Dissemination: Process by which an agent is released into the environment, such as by contamination of food, water, objects, surfaces, infected vectors, aerosol-generation devices, etc.

Mode of Transmission: Infectious agent transfer, through direct or indirect contact, from a natural source to a susceptible host.

Model: Physical, conceptual, or mathematical approximation of a real phenomenon.

Morbidity: Incidence of disease in a population and/or a geographic location.

Mortality: Incidence of death or the number of deaths in a population.

National Biosurveillance Integration Center (NBIC): An entity within DHS, NBIC serves as the designated government entity to synthesize and analyze information collected from across the spectrum of biosurveillance organizations.

Natural Attenuation: Natural processes to clean up or reduce the effect of pollution in soil and groundwater.

Non-Pharmaceutical Interventions (NPIs): Items such as ventilators and devices; personal protective equipment such as face masks and gloves; and public health interventions (e.g., contact and transmission interventions, social distancing, and community shielding) to prevent and mitigate the health effects of biological agents, some of which may be HHS FDA-regulated and some of which are not.

Outbreak: Increase in a disease in a certain geographic area, over a certain period of time, above an expected baseline. (An expected baseline may be one case for smallpox, for example, but for other diseases there may be some other baseline level that needs to be exceeded to be considered an outbreak).

Pandemic: Epidemic that has spread to human populations across a large geographic area.

Pathogens: Organisms (e.g., bacteria, viruses, parasites, and fungi) that cause disease.

Personal NPIs: Protective actions that can help individuals avoid exposure to pathogens and limit the further spread of pathogens in the environment.

Personal Protective Equipment (PPE): Used to minimize exposure to a pathogen and generally refers to clothing (e.g., goggles, shoes, gloves, etc.) and respiratory equipment (e.g., masks, self-contained breathing apparatuses).

Points of Dispensing (PODs): Community locations in which state and local agencies dispense MCMs to the public during a public health emergency.

Post-Exposure Prophylaxis (PEP): Vaccines and antibiotics given to exposed (or potentially exposed) individuals to inhibit the development of disease.

Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD): Mental health condition triggered by either experiencing or witnessing a traumatizing event.

Presidential Policy Directive (PPD): Used to issue Presidential decisions on national security matters.

Prophylaxis: Actions and/or measures taken to prevent disease.

Public Health Emergency: Incident, either natural or man-made, that creates a health risk to the public.

Quarantine: Segregation of individuals, families, groups, and communities that have been exposed to a contagious disease but are not ill. These individuals are physically separated, and their movement restricted within defined geographic areas. Quarantine may be done at home or in a restricted area depending on the specific nature of the biological incident.

Reachback: Products, services, equipment, material, or human resources including subject matter experts from organizations that are not forward deployed.

Recovery Support Functions (RSFs): Comprise the coordinating structure for key functional areas of assistance in the National Disaster Recovery Framework (NDRF). Support local governments by facilitating problem solving, improving access to resources, and fostering coordination among state and federal agencies, non-governmental partners, and stakeholders.

Reservoirs: Habitat where an infectious agent normally lives, grows, and multiplies including humans, animals, or the environment.

Service Animal: Any guide dog, signal dog, or other animal individually trained to provide assistance to an individual with a disability including, but not limited to, guiding individuals with impaired vision, alerting individuals with impaired hearing to intruders or sounds, providing minimal protection or rescue work, pulling a wheelchair, or fetching dropped items.

Simulation: Imitation of characteristics, processes, or systems over time using another system.

Social Distancing: Actions taken by public health officials to stop or slow down the spread of a highly contagious disease (e.g., closing schools).

Robert T. Stafford Disaster Relief and Emergency Assistance Act (Stafford Act) Declaration: Invoked by the President of the United States in response to an incident either as requested by the states and/or by a federal agency requesting federal-to-federal assistance.

Strategic National Stockpile (SNS): Managed by HHS ASPR; composed of pharmaceuticals (e.g., medications, antibiotics, and IVs) and medical supplies (e.g., equipment, surgical items, etc.) that may be required to control and/or respond to a public health emergency.

Supply Chain: Steps taken to get a product or service to the end user.

Syndromic Surveillance: Tracking of disease indicators that occur before clinical diagnosis confirmation, such as chief complaint data from urgent medical visits, over-the-counter medication purchases, school absenteeism rates, and keyword (e.g., “fever,” “vomit”) presence on social media platforms.

Symptomatic: Showing symptoms or signs of a disease or injury.

Therapeutics: Remedies for disease including treatments, therapies, and/or drugs.

Vaccine: Killed or weakened microorganism products used to artificially induce immunity against a disease.

Vector/Vector-Borne Diseases: Infections transmitted by the bite of infected arthropod species, such as mosquitoes, ticks, sandflies, and blackflies.

Virulence: Severity or harmfulness of a disease.

Virus: Microscopic organism that multiplies within cells and causes disease such as chickenpox, measles, mumps, and rubella. Viruses are not affected by antibiotics, the drugs used to kill bacteria.

Zoonosis: Disease movement from animal to human communities under natural conditions.